

PA 2087

.K4

1867













Jennings  
Sept. / 67

# THE PUBLIC SCHOOL

## LATIN PRIMER.

EDITED WITH THE SANCTION OF THE HEAD MASTERS  
OF THE PUBLIC SCHOOLS INCLUDED IN  
HER MAJESTY'S COMMISSION.

[Kennedy, Benjamin Hall]

---

*Ordinis haec virtus erit et Venus, aut ego fallor,  
Ut jam nunc dicat jam nunc debentia dici,  
Pleraque differat et praesens in tempus omittat.*

Hor. ad Pis. 42.

---

LONDON:  
LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.  
1867.

PA 2087  
K4  
1867

*Preparing for Publication.*

**SUBSIDIA PRIMARIA.**

PARTS I. AND II.

BEING

COMPANION BOOKS TO THE PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN PRIMER.

**Gift**

**Mrs. Hennen Jennings**

**April 26, 1933**

## PREFACE.

---

THE PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN PRIMER is founded on a Latin grammar, which has been largely used in English schools during the last twenty years. It has been revised with great care and attention, first by its author, subsequently by the Head-masters of various public schools, with the advice of other scholars engaged in classical instruction.

The Primer is put forth as a standard grammar for all classes in public schools below the highest: and the design is, by exhibiting in clear and concise synthesis the leading principles and facts of Latin, to carry learners forward in the right direction to that stage of progress from which they may advance to wider philological studies without having anything to unlearn.

In the manner of its use, this book does not differ from the grammar on which it is founded, or from any other synthetic grammar. Its memorial lessons need discreet guidance, careful explanation, and sound catechesis on the part of masters. They need also to be supported and supplemented by good exercise-books (*Subsidia Primaria*) of a merely analytic and imitative character.

The distinctive features of the Primer are mainly these:—

1. By discerning from the outset the Stem (or Crude Form) of declined words, the learner is prepared to understand the principles of higher philology.
2. The arrangement of the Six Cases given by Key, Madvig, and Roby, is adopted.
3. The division of the Verb into two parts, Finite and Infinite, appears as in Krüger's grammar.
4. Neat and uniform adjustment of the Paradigms is observed as an important aid to the memory.
5. The Memorial Syntax appears in English (with the Latin Examples) as well as in Latin, to meet the wish of those masters who object to the use of Latin rules. In the English rules brevity and precision are, as far as possible, preserved.
6. An Appendix of brief Notes is given, enabling learners to make considerable advance in the study of Latin.
7. A Glossary of Terms is added for the purpose of reference.

Any remarks (sent through the Publishers), which may tend to improve future editions, will be thankfully received and fully considered.

LONDON:  
*January, 1867.*

THE  
PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN PRIMER.

---

---

**ETYMOLOGY.**

---

THE LETTERS.

§ 1. The Latin ALPHABET is the English without W. The Letters have two forms : (1) the Capital, or ancient ; and (2) the Cursive, or modern form.

(1) A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P

(2) a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p

Q R S T U V X Y Z.

q r s t u v x y z.

§ 2. The VOWELS, *sounding by themselves*, are a, e, i, o, u, y.

§ 3. The CONSONANTS *sound with Vowels* : of these

The Mutes are b, c, d, g, k, p, q, and t :

The Liquids are l, m, n, r :

The Spirants f, h, j, s, v :

The Double, x and z, express two letters each, cs, ds.

1. K remains in very few words: as, Kalendae.

2. Y and z only in words from the Greek: as, Dryas, zona.

3. Q blends with u or v: as, quis or quis.

4. I and u are Half-consonants, corresponding to the Half-vowels j and v.

§ 4. Latin has three usual DIPHTHONGS (double vowels),  
æ (æ), œ (œ), au : three seldom used, ei, eu, ui.



§ 5. Latin is spelt by SYLLABLES, as English.

§ 6. The Quantity of syllables is short (◌), long (◌-), or doubtful (◌◌), as the vowels are short, long, or doubtful : as, fūgērĭs.

A Vowel may be—

- (1) Short or long by nature : as, āmās.
- (2) Short by nature, but long by position : as, vīndēx. § 162. 4.
- (3) Short by nature, but doubtful by position : as, quādrūplo. § 162. a.

§ 7. Diphthongs are long.

§ 8. The modern Stops are used in Latin.

## PARTS OF SPEECH.

§ 9. The PARTS OF SPEECH, or WORDS, are of three kinds :  
I. NOUNS ; II. VERB ; III. PARTICLES.

I. (1) The SUBSTANTIVE names a Thing :

As, **rex**, a king ; **Caesār**, Caesar.

- (a) Names of Persons and Places are PROPER NAMES.  
All others are APPELLATIVA, or COMMON NOUNS.

(2) The ADJECTIVE attributes Quality :

As, mǎrĕ **vastum**, the vast sea.

**Vastum** is called an ATTRIBUTE or EPITHET of mǎrĕ.\*

(3) The PRONOUN stands for Substantive or Adjective.

As, **tū**, thou ; mǎnūs **haec**, this hand.

II. (4) The VERB states what a Thing is, does, or suffers :

As, hōmīnēs **cānunt**, men sing.

- (a) Hōmīnēs is called the SUBJECT.  
Cānunt is called the PREDICATE.

(b) When we say,  
Mors est prōpinquā, death is nigh,  
Mors is the Subject ;  
Est is called the COPULA ;  
Prōpinquā is called the COMPLEMENT ;  
And Copula with Complement is the Predicate.

\* A Substantive attributively joined to another Substantive is called its APPOSITE : as, Croesūs rex Lŷdōrum, Croesus, king of the Lydians, where rex is Apposite to Croesūs, and agrees with it in Case.

- III. (5) The ADVERB shows Where, When, or How :  
As, **Hūc** currē **nunc cēlērītēr**, *run hither now quickly.*
- (6) The PREPOSITION governs the Case of a Noun ;  
and shows the relation of it to some other word :  
As, stō **ād** fōrēs, *I stand at the door.*
- (7) The CONJUNCTION links words and clauses :  
As, ōvēs **ēt** āvēs, *sheep and birds.*
- (8) The INTERJECTION is an exclamation :  
As, **eccē** ningīt, *lo, it snows.*

PARTICLES.

*Note.* There is no Article in Latin like *a, an, the*, in English. Thus *lux* may mean *a light, the light, or simply light.*

§ 10. Hence the Parts of Speech may be called eight :

- |                     |                            |
|---------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Substantive,     | 5. Adverb,                 |
| 2. Adjective,       | 6. Preposition,            |
| 3. Pronoun,         | 7. Conjunction,            |
| 4. Verb,            | 8. Interjection,           |
| Which have Flexion. | Which are without Flexion. |

§ 11. (1) The changes made in a word, in order to vary its meaning, are called its FLEXION or INFLECTION.

(2) Nouns are DECLINED.

Verbs are CONJUGATED.

(3) A Noun has three ACCIDENTS : NUMBER, CASE, GENDER ;  
A Verb five : VOICE, MOOD, TENSE, NUMBER, PERSON.

*a.* The STEM is that part of a word on which the changes of Flexion are based.

*b.* A Flexional addition at the end of the Stem is called an ENDING or SUFFIX.

*c.* The last letter of the Stem is called the CHARACTER, and in this book is often indicated by a Capital.

*d.* The Stem of a Noun is usually discerned by casting off *-rum* or *-um* from the Genitive Plural : \* as, mensa-, dōmīno-, lēon-, māri-, grādu-, dīe-.

*e.* The Stem of a Verb is shown in the Imperative Mood : as, āma-, audī-, mōne-. But in the Third Conjugation *-ē* must be cast off : as, rēg-ē ; and in a Deponent Verb *-rē* or *-ērē* : as, fa-rē, re-rē, lāb-ērē.

*f.* The Root is that part which a word has in common with kindred words. Thus in āgītārē, āgīta- is the Stem, but ag- the Root, as shown by comparing āg-ērē, ag-men. And *g* is the Root-character.

\* Dropping *-rum* in the First, Second, and Fifth Declensions ; *-um* in the Third and Fourth.

## DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

§ 12. The Substantive is declined by Number and Case: the Adjective by Number, Case, and Gender, agreeing in these with its Substantive. See § 9 (2).

§ 13. The Numbers are two: 1. SINGULAR, speaking of one, as *mensā*, a table; 2. PLURAL, of more than one, as *mensae*, tables.

§ 14. The Cases are six.

*Answers the question*

1. NOMINATIVE . . .	Who or what?	Quis dedit? . . .	} Vīr, A man.
		Who gave? . . .	
2. VOCATIVE (Case of one addressed) . . .			} Vīr, O man.
3. ACCUSATIVE . . .	Whom or what?	Quem vidēo? . . .	} Vīrum, A man.
		Whom see I? . . .	
4. GENITIVE . . .	Whose or whereof?	Cujus donum? . . .	} Vīrī, A man's.
		Whose gift? . . .	
5. DATIVE . . .	To or for whom or what?	Cui datum? . . .	} Vīrō, To a man.
		To whom given? . . .	
6. ABLATIVE* . . .	By, with, &c., whom or what?	Ā quō datum? . . .	} Ā vīrō, By a man.
		By whom given? . . .	

§ 15. The Genders are three: 1. MASCULINE; 2. FEMININE; 3. NEUTER. A Substantive which may be either Masculine or Feminine is said to be COMMON to both Genders.

## SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 16. There are five Declensions of Latin Substantives, known by the endings of their Genitives:—

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
Gen. Sing.	ae	ī	is	ūs	ēī
Gen. Plur.	Ārum	Ōrum	um† or Īum	Uum	Ērum

§ 17. (1) In Neuter Nouns, the Nominative, Vocative, and Accusative are the same in each Number severally; and in the Plural they end in *ā*.

(2) The Vocative of Latin words is the same as the Nominative, except in Singular Nouns of the Second Declension like *dōmīnūs*, *filīūs*.

(3) The Dative and Ablative Plural are always the same.

\* Many English Particles may be signs of the Latin Ablative: as, *by, with, from, in, upon, of, for, at, than*.

† The Consonant before *um* is the Character. See § 11 c; § 21 (a).

## THE FIRST DECLENSION (A-nouns).

§ 18. The First Declension contains Latin Nouns, mostly Feminine, with Nominative in **ǎ**; and a few Greek words, chiefly Proper Names, in **ās**, **ēs**, Masculine, and **ē** Feminine.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	<b>Mensǎ</b> , <i>a table</i>	<b>Mensae</b> , <i>tables, f.</i>
Voc.	<b>Mensǎ</b> , <i>O table</i>	<b>Mensae</b> , <i>O tables</i>
Acc.	<b>Mensam</b> , <i>a table</i>	<b>Mensās</b> , <i>tables</i>
Gen.	<b>Mensae</b> , <i>of a table</i>	<b>Mensārum</b> , <i>of tables</i>
Dat.	<b>Mensae</b> , <i>to or for a table</i>	<b>Mensīs</b> , <i>to or for tables</i>
Abl.	<b>Mensǎ</b> , <i>by, with, or from a table</i>	<b>Mensīs</b> , <i>by, with, or from tables</i>

Decline also :

	Singular.			
	<i>Goddess, f.</i>	<i>Son of Theseus, m.</i>	<i>Aeneas, m.</i>	<i>Cybele, f.</i>
Nom.	Dě-ǎ	Thēsīd-ēs	Aenē-ās	Cýběl-ē
Voc.	Dě-ǎ	Thēsīd-ē (ǎ, ā)	Aenē-ā	Cýběl-ē
Acc.	Dě-am	Thēsīd-ēn (am)	Aenē-ān (am)	Cýběl-ēn
Gen.	Dě-ae	Thēsīd-ae	Aenē-ae	Cýběl-ēs (ae)
Dat.	Dě-ae	Thēsīd-ae	Aenē-ae	Cýběl-ae
Abl.	Dě-ā	Thēsīd-ē (ā)	Aenē-ā	Cýběl-ē (ā)

## Plural.

N. V.	Dě-ae	Thēsīd-ae	(as Mensǎ,	(as Mensǎ,
Acc.	Dě-ās	Thēsīd-ās	but rare.)	but rare.)
Gen.	Dě-Ārum	Thēsīd-um		
D. Abl.	Dě-ābūs.	Thēsīd-is.		

*Note.*—Masc. Substantives in **ǎ** are declined like *mensǎ* : as *pěťǎ*, *a poet*.

## THE SECOND DECLENSION (O-nouns).

§ 19. The Second Declension contains Nouns with Nominative in **ūs**, **ēr**, generally Masculine, and in **um**, Neuter.

## (a) MASCULINE.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	<b>Dōmīnūs</b> , <i>a lord</i>	<b>Dōmīnī</b> , <i>lords, m.</i>
Voc.	<b>Dōmīně</b> , <i>O lord</i>	<b>Dōmīnī</b> , <i>O lords</i>
Acc.	<b>Dōmīnum</b> , <i>a lord</i>	<b>Dōmīnōs</b> , <i>lords</i>
Gen.	<b>Dōmīnī</b> , <i>of a lord</i>	<b>Dōmīnōrum</b> , <i>of lords</i>
Dat.	<b>Dōmīnō</b> , <i>to or for a lord</i>	<b>Dōmīnīs</b> , <i>to, or for lords</i>
Abl.	<b>Dōmīnō</b> , <i>by, with, or from a lord</i>	<b>Dōmīnīs</b> , <i>by, with, or from lords.</i>



	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	<b>Pŭēr</b> , <i>a boy</i>	<b>Pŭērī</b> , <i>boys, m.</i>
Voc.	<b>Pŭēr</b> , <i>O boy</i>	<b>Pŭērī</b> , <i>O boys</i>
Acc.	<b>Pŭērūm</b> , <i>a boy</i>	<b>Pŭērōs</b> , <i>boys</i>
Gen.	<b>Pŭērī</b> , <i>of a boy</i>	<b>Pŭērōrum</b> , <i>of boys</i>
Dat.	<b>Pŭērō</b> , <i>to or for a boy</i>	<b>Pŭērīs</b> , <i>to or for boys</i>
Abl.	<b>Pŭērō</b> , <i>by, with, or from a boy</i>	<b>Pŭērīs</b> , <i>by, with, or from boys.</i>
Nom.	<b>Măgistĕr</b> , <i>the master</i>	<b>Măgistrī</b> , <i>masters, m.</i>
Voc.	<b>Măgistĕr</b> , <i>O master</i>	<b>Măgistrī</b> , <i>O masters</i>
Acc.	<b>Măgistrūm</b> , <i>the master</i>	<b>Măgistrōs</b> , <i>masters</i>
Gen.	<b>Măgistrī</b> , <i>of the master</i>	<b>Măgistrōrum</b> , <i>of masters</i>
Dat.	<b>Măgistrō</b> , <i>to or for the master</i>	<b>Măgistrīs</b> , <i>to or for masters</i>
Abl.	<b>Măgistrō</b> , <i>by, with, or from the master</i>	<b>Măgistrīs</b> , <i>by, with, or from masters.</i>

## (b) NEUTER.

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V. A.	<b>Bellūm</b> , <i>war, or O war</i>	<b>Bellă</b> , <i>wars or O wars</i>
Gen.	<b>Bellī</b> , <i>of war</i>	<b>Bellōrum</b> , <i>of wars</i>
Dat.	<b>Bellō</b> , <i>to or for war</i>	<b>Bellis</b> , <i>to or for wars</i>
Abl.	<b>Bellō</b> , <i>by, with, or from war</i>	<b>Bellis</b> , <i>by, with, or from wars.</i>

Decline also:

	Singular.			
	<i>Son, m.</i>	<i>Coin, m.</i>	<i>God, m.</i>	<i>Garlic, n.</i>
Nom.	Filī- <b>ŭs</b>	Nŭm- <b>ŭs</b>	Dĕ- <b>ŭs</b>	Allī- <b>um</b>
Voc.	Fil- <b>ī</b>	Nŭm- <b>ĕ</b>	Dĕ- <b>ŭs</b>	Allī- <b>um</b>
Acc.	Filī- <b>um</b>	Nŭm- <b>um</b>	Dĕ- <b>um</b>	Allī- <b>um</b>
Gen.	Filī- <b>ī</b> or Filī	Nŭm- <b>ī</b>	Dĕ- <b>ī</b>	Allī or Allī- <b>ī</b>
D. Abl.	Filī- <b>ō</b>	Nŭm- <b>ō</b>	Dĕ- <b>ō</b>	Allī- <b>ō</b>
	Plural.			
N. V.	Filī- <b>ī</b>	Nŭm- <b>ī</b>	Dī (seldom Dĕi)	Allī- <b>ă</b>
Acc.	Filī- <b>ōs</b>	Nŭm- <b>ōs</b>	Dĕ- <b>ōs</b>	Allī- <b>ă</b>
Gen.	Filī- <b>ōrum</b>	{ Nŭm- <b>ōrum</b> or Nŭm- <b>um</b> }	{ Dĕ- <b>ōrum</b> or Dĕ- <b>um</b> }	Allī- <b>ōrum</b>
D. Abl.	Filī- <b>īs.</b>	Nŭm- <b>īs.</b>	Dīs (seldom Dĕīs).	Allī- <b>īs.</b>

## THE THIRD DECLENSION (Consonant and I-nouns).

§ 20. The Third Declension has two Divisions :

I. Nouns which have for Character a Consonant.

II. Nouns which have for Character the Half-consonant I.

Of these Divisions the First is Imparisyllable, having more syllables in the Genitive than in the Nominative Singular.

The Second is Parisyllable, having the same number of syllables in the Genitive as in the Nominative.

But a few Parisyllable Nouns belong to the Consonant Division ; and many Imparisyllable Nouns to the I-Division.

The Endings of the Nominative Singular are numerous.

§ 21.

## I. CONSONANT-NOUNS.

## (a) MASCULINE AND FEMININE.

## Singular.

## Plural.

N. V.	<b>Jūdex</b> , a judge, or <i>O judge</i>	<b>Jūdīcēs</b> , judges, or <i>O judges, c.</i>
Acc.	<b>Jūdīcem</b> , a judge	<b>Jūdīcēs</b> , judges
Gen.	<b>Jūdīcīs</b> , of a judge	<b>JūdīCum</b> , of judges
Dat.	<b>Jūdīcī</b> , to or for a judge	<b>Jūdīcībūs</b> , to or for judges
Abl.	<b>Jūdīcē</b> , by, with, or from a judge	<b>Jūdīcībūs</b> , by, with, or from judges.
N. V.	<b>Aetās</b> , an age, or <i>O age</i>	<b>Aetātēs</b> , ages, or <i>O ages, f.</i>
Acc.	<b>Aetātem</b> , an age	<b>Aetātēs</b> , ages
Gen.	<b>Aetātīs</b> , of an age	<b>AetāTum</b> , of ages
Dat.	<b>Aetātī</b> , to or for an age	<b>Aetātībūs</b> , to or for ages
Abl.	<b>Aetātē</b> , by, with, or from an age	<b>Aetātībūs</b> , by, with, or from ages.
N. V.	<b>Lēō</b> , a lion, or <i>O lion</i>	<b>Lēōnēs</b> , lions, or <i>O lions, m.</i>
Acc.	<b>Lēōnem</b> , a lion	<b>Lēōnēs</b> , lions
Gen.	<b>Lēōnīs</b> , of a lion	<b>LēōNum</b> , of lions
Dat.	<b>Lēōnī</b> , to or for a lion	<b>Lēōnībūs</b> , to or for lions
Abl.	<b>Lēōnē</b> , by, with, or from a lion	<b>Lēōnībūs</b> , by, with, or from lions.
N. V.	<b>Virgō</b> , a virgin, or <i>O virgin</i>	<b>Virgīnēs</b> , virgins, or <i>O virgins, f.</i>
Acc.	<b>Virgīnem</b> , a virgin	<b>Virgīnēs</b> , virgins
Gen.	<b>Virgīnīs</b> , of a virgin	<b>VirgīNum</b> , of virgins
Dat.	<b>Virgīnī</b> , to or for a virgin	<b>Virgīnībūs</b> , to or for virgins
Abl.	<b>Virgīnē</b> , by, with, or from a virgin	<b>Virgīnībūs</b> , by, with, or from virgins.

Decline also :

		Singular.					
		<i>Law, f.</i>	<i>Foot, m.</i>	<i>Love, m.</i>	<i>Cinder, c.</i>	<i>Father, m.</i>	
N. V.	Lex	Pēs	Āmōr	Cīnīs	Pātr	—	
Acc.	Lēg-	Pēd-	Āmōr-	Cīnēr-	Pātr-	<b>em</b>	
Gen.	Lēg-	Pēd-	Āmōr-	Cīnēr-	Pātr-	<b>is</b>	
Dat.	Lēg-	Pēd-	Āmōr-	Cīnēr-	Pātr-	<b>i</b>	
Abl.	Lēg-	Pēd-	Āmōr-	Cīnēr-	Pātr-	<b>ē</b>	
		Plural.					
N. V. A.	Lēg-	Pēd-	Āmōr-	Cīnēr-	Pātr-	<b>ēs</b>	
Gen.	Lēg-	Pēd-	Āmōr-	Cīnēr-	Pātr-	<b>um</b>	
D. Abl.	Lēg-	Pēd-	Āmōr-	Cīnēr-	Pātr-	<b>ībūs</b>	

(b) NEUTER.

		Singular.	Plural.
N. V. A.	<b>Nōmēn</b> , name, or O name	<b>Nōmīnā</b> , names, or O names	
Gen.	<b>Nōmīnīs</b> , of a name	<b>NōmīNum</b> , of names	
Dat.	<b>Nōmīnī</b> , to or for a name	<b>Nōmīnībūs</b> , to or for names	
Abl.	<b>Nōmīnē</b> , by, with, or from a name	<b>Nōmīnībūs</b> , by, with, or from names.	
N. V. A.	<b>Ōpūs</b> , a work, or O work	<b>Ōpērā</b> , works, or O works	
Gen.	<b>Ōpērīs</b> , of a work	<b>ŌpēRum</b> , of works	
Dat.	<b>Ōpērī</b> , to or for a work	<b>Ōpērībūs</b> , to or for works	
Abl.	<b>Ōpērē</b> , by, with, or from a work	<b>Ōpērībūs</b> , by, with, or from works.	

Decline also the Neuter Nouns :

		Singular.					
		<i>Head.</i>	<i>Lightning.</i>	<i>Leg.</i>	<i>Hard wood.</i>	<i>Body.</i>	
N. V. A.	Cāpūt	Fulgūr	Crūs	Rōbūr	Corpūs	—	
Gen.	Cāpīt-	Fulgūr-	Crūr-	Rōbōr-	Corpōr-	<b>is</b>	
Dat.	Cāpīt-	Fulgūr-	Crūr-	Rōbōr-	Corpōr-	<b>i</b>	
Abl.	Cāpīt-	Fulgūr-	Crūr-	Rōbōr-	Corpōr-	<b>ē</b>	
		Plural.					
N. V. A.	Cāpīt-	Fulgūr-	Crūr-	Rōbōr-	Corpōr-	<b>ā</b>	
Gen.	Cāpīt-	Fulgūr-	Crūr-	Rōbōr-	Corpōr-	<b>um</b>	
D. Abl.	Cāpīt-	Fulgūr-	Crūr-	Rōbōr-	Corpōr-	<b>ībūs</b>	



## § 22.

## II. I-NOUNS.

## (a) MASCULINE AND FEMININE.

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V.	<b>Ōvīs</b> , a sheep, or <i>O sheep</i>	<b>Ōvēs</b> , sheep, or <i>O sheep</i> , f.
Acc.	<b>Ōvem</b> , a sheep	<b>Ōvēs</b> , or <b>Ōvīs</b> ,* sheep
Gen.	<b>Ōvīs</b> , of a sheep	<b>Ōvīum</b> , of sheep
Dat.	<b>Ōvī</b> , to or for a sheep	<b>Ōvībūs</b> , to or for sheep
Abl.	<b>Ōvē</b> , by, with, or from a sheep	<b>Ōvībūs</b> , by, with, or from sheep.
N. V.	<b>Nūbēs</b> , a cloud, or <i>O cloud</i>	<b>Nūbēs</b> , clouds, or <i>O clouds</i> , f.
Acc.	<b>Nūbem</b> , a cloud	<b>Nūbēs</b> , or <b>Nūbīs</b> ,* clouds
Gen.	<b>Nūbīs</b> , of a cloud	<b>Nūbīum</b> , of clouds
Dat.	<b>Nūbī</b> , to or for a cloud	<b>Nūbībūs</b> , to or for clouds
Abl.	<b>Nūbē</b> , by, with, or from a cloud	<b>Nūbībūs</b> , by, with, or from clouds.
N. V.	<b>Dens</b> , a tooth, or <i>O tooth</i>	<b>Dentēs</b> , teeth, or <i>O teeth</i> , m.
Acc.	<b>Dentem</b> , a tooth	<b>Dentēs</b> , or <b>Dentīs</b> ,* teeth
Gen.	<b>Dentīs</b> , of a tooth	<b>Dentīum</b> ,† of teeth
Dat.	<b>Dentī</b> , to or for a tooth	<b>Dentībūs</b> , to or for teeth
Abl.	<b>Dentē</b> , by, with, or from a tooth	<b>Dentībūs</b> , by, with, or from teeth.

Decline also :

	Singular.			
	<i>Cough</i> , f.	<i>Key</i> , f.	<i>Canal</i> , m.	<i>Shower</i> , m.
N. V.	Tuss- <b>īs</b>	Clāv- <b>īs</b>	Cānāl- <b>īs</b>	Imbēr
Acc.	Tuss- <b>im</b>	Clāv- <b>em</b> or <b>im</b>	Cānāl- <b>em</b>	Imbr- <b>em</b>
Gen.	Tuss- <b>īs</b>	Clāv- <b>īs</b>	Cānāl- <b>īs</b>	Imbr- <b>īs</b>
Dat.	Tuss- <b>ī</b>	Clāv- <b>ī</b>	Cānāl- <b>ī</b>	Imbr- <b>ī</b>
Abl.	Tuss- <b>ī</b>	Clāv- <b>ē</b> or <b>ī</b>	Cānāl- <b>ī</b>	Imbr- <b>ē</b> or <b>ī</b>
	Plural.			
N. V. A.	Tuss- <b>ēs</b>	Clāv- <b>ēs</b>	Cānāl- <b>ēs</b>	Imbr- <b>ēs</b> *
Gen.	Tuss- <b>īum</b>	Clāv- <b>īum</b>	Cānāl- <b>īum</b>	Imbr- <b>īum</b>
D. Abl.	Tuss- <b>ībūs</b> .	Clāv- <b>ībūs</b> .	Cānāl- <b>ībūs</b> .	Imbr- <b>ībūs</b> .

\* The Accus. Plur. of I-nouns, Masc. and Fem., is also spelt with ending *is*, and so appears in most ancient manuscripts, and in many editions of Latin authors.† I-nouns in -ans, -ens, often drop *i* in Gen. Plur. ; as *pārentum* for *pārentium*.

## (b) NEUTER.

## Singular.

	<i>Bone.</i>	<i>Sea.</i>	<i>Spur.</i>	<i>Animal.</i>
N. V. A.	<b>Ůs</b>	<b>Mǎřě</b>	<b>Calcār</b>	<b>Ānimāl</b>
Gen.	<b>Ossīs</b>	<b>Mǎřís</b>	<b>Calcārís</b>	<b>Ānimālís</b>
Dat.	<b>Ossī</b>	<b>Mǎřī</b>	<b>Calcārī</b>	<b>Ānimālī</b>
Abl.	<b>Ossě</b>	<b>Mǎřī</b>	<b>Calcārī</b>	<b>Ānimālī</b>

## Plural.

N. V. A.	<b>Ossǎ</b>	<b>Mǎřǎ</b>	<b>Calcārǎ</b>	<b>Ānimālǎ</b>
Gen.	<b>Ossīum</b>	<b>Mǎřīum</b>	<b>Calcārīum</b>	<b>Ānimālīum</b>
D. Abl.	<b>Ossībūs.</b>	<b>Mǎřībūs.</b>	<b>Calcārībūs.</b>	<b>Ānimālībūs.</b>

## THE FOURTH DECLENSION (U-nouns).

§ 23. Masculine and Feminine Substantives in the Fourth Declension form the Nominative in ůs; Neuter Nouns in ů.

## Singular.

## Plural.

N. V.	<b>Grǎdūs</b> , <i>a step</i> , or <i>O step</i>	<b>Grǎdūs</b> , <i>steps</i> , or <i>O steps</i> , m.
Acc.	<b>Grǎdum</b> , <i>a step</i>	<b>Grǎdūs</b> , <i>steps</i>
Gen.	<b>Grǎdūs</b> , <i>of a step</i>	<b>GrǎdŮum</b> , <i>of steps</i>
Dat.	<b>Grǎdůi</b> , <i>to or for a step</i>	<b>Grǎdībūs</b> (ůbūs), <i>to or for steps</i>
Abl.	<b>Grǎdů</b> , <i>by, with, or from a step</i>	<b>Grǎdībūs</b> (ůbūs), <i>by, with, or from steps.</i>

N. V. A.	<b>Gěnů</b> , <i>a knee</i> , or <i>O knee</i>	<b>Gěnůǎ</b> , <i>knees</i> , or <i>O knees</i> , n.
Gen.	<b>Gěnůs</b> , <i>of a knee</i>	<b>GěnŮum</b> , <i>of knees</i>
Dat.	<b>Gěnů</b> , <i>to or for a knee</i>	<b>Gěnībūs</b> (ůbūs), <i>to or for knees</i>
Abl.	<b>Gěnů</b> , <i>by, with, or from a knee</i>	<b>Gěnībūs</b> (ůbūs), <i>by, with, or from knees.</i>

## THE FIFTH DECLENSION (E-nouns).

§ 24. The Fifth Declension contains Feminine Nouns with Nominative in ěs. (Concerning děs, see § 31.)

## Singular.

## Plural.

N. V.	<b>Děs</b> , <i>a day</i> , or <i>O day</i>	<b>Děs</b> , <i>days</i> , or <i>O days</i> , c.
Acc.	<b>Děm</b> , <i>a day</i>	<b>Děs</b> , <i>days</i>
Gen.	<b>Děěi</b> , <i>of a day</i>	<b>DěĚrum</b> , <i>of days</i>
Dat.	<b>Děěi</b> , <i>to or for a day</i>	<b>DěĚbūs</b> , <i>to or for days</i>
Abl.	<b>Děě</b> , <i>by, with, or from a day</i>	<b>DěĚbūs</b> , <i>by, with, or from days.</i>

## § 25. ANOMALIES OF THE NOUN.

- (1) Many Nouns are used in the Singular only: as,  
Argentum, aurum, ferrum, plebs, justitiā,  
Vēr, aevum, lētum, sanguis, pūēritiā.

*Note.*—Add āēr, *air* (Acc. S. āērā or āērem), aether, *sky*  
(Acc. S. aethērā or aethērem), with many more.

- (2) Many are used in the Plural only:  
As, Mānēs, lōcūlī, Pēnātēs,  
Dīvītiāe, cūnae, nūgae, grātēs,  
With armā, mūniā, māgālīā,  
And festive seasons, as Flōrālīā.

- (3) Some Nouns change their meaning in the Plural:  
As, ōpērā, *exertion*;  
Ōpērae, *working-people*.

- (4) Many Nouns are Defective in Case:  
As, dāpīs, ōpīs, vīs.

- (5) Some Nouns take forms from *two* Declensions:  
As, laurūs, *bay-tree* (Gen. ī and ūs).

*Note.*—These are called Hētērōclītā.

- (6) Some vary the Gender:  
As, jōcūs, *jest*, Pl. jōcī and jōcā;  
Lōcūs, *place*, Pl. lōcī and lōcā;  
Frēnum, *bit*, Pl. frēnī and frēnā;  
Rastrum, *harrow*, Pl. rastrī and rastrā.

*Note.*—These are called Hētērōgēnēā.

## a. Decline the Defective Nouns:

						Singular.
						Feast, f.    Fruit, f.    Help, f.    Prayer, f.    Change, f.
N. V.	—	—	—	—	—	—
Acc.	Dāp-	Frūg-	Ōp-	Prēc-	Vīc-	<b>em</b>
Gen.	Dāp-	Frūg-	Ōp-	—	Vīc-	<b>īs</b>
Dat.	Dāp-	Frūg-	—	Prēc-	—	<b>ī</b>
Abl.	Dāp-	Frūg-	Ōp-	Prēc-	Vīc-	<b>ē</b>

Full Plural, with endings **ēs, um, ūbūs**, as § 21: except vīc-**īum**.

S. N. Vīs, *strength*, f. Acc. vim. Abl. vī. Pl. vīrēs, vīrīum, vīrībūs.

b. The Heteroclite Noun Dōmūs, *house*, f., is like Grādūs; but forms  
Sing. Dat. -ūī or -ō. Abl. ō. Plur. Acc. -ūs or -ōs. Gen. ūum or ōrum.  
Dōmī, *at home*.

## GENDER OF NOUNS.

## § 26.

## GENERAL RULES.

- (1) The Gender of a Latin Noun is shown by Meaning or by Form.
- (2) Males, Months, Winds, and People, are always Masculine, and most Names of Mountains and Rivers.
- (3) Females and Islands are Feminine, and most Names of Countries, Cities, and Trees.
- (4) Nouns indeclinable are Neuter: as, *fās*, *nēfās*, and the Verb-noun Infinitive ;  
*Est summum nēfās fallēř,*  
*Deceit is gross impiety.*
- (5) Common are to either sex:  
*Artifex* and *řpifex*,  
*Convivā*, *vātēs*, *advēnā*,  
*Testis*, *civīs*, *incōlā*,  
*Pārens*, *sācerdōs*, *custōs*, *vindex*,  
*Ādōlescens*, *infans*, *index*,  
*Jūdex*, *hērēs*, *cōmēs*, *dux*,  
*Princeps*, *mūniceps*, *conjux*,  
*Obsēs*, *ālēs*, *interprēs*,  
*Auctōr*, *exūl*; and with these  
*Bōs*, *dāmā*, *talpā*, *tigris*, *grūs*,  
*Cānis* and *anguis*, *serpens*, *sūs*.\*

## § 27.

## GENDER IN THE FIRST DECLENSION.

*Princ. Rule.*—Substantives of the First Declension in *ā*, *ē*, are Feminine. Substantives in *ās*, *ēs*, are Masculine.

*Exc.* Nouns denoting males in *ā*  
 Are by meaning Masculine ;  
 And added to the Males must be  
*Hādriā*, *the Hadriatic Sea.*

\* Many of these words (with others, as *hostis*, *hospēs*, *mīlēs*, *praesēs*, *augūr*, *aurigā*) are rarely found Feminine. A few are rarely Masculine: as, *dāmā*, *talpā*, *tigris*, *grūs*, *sūs*. Some are equally used in each Gender, when Singular: as, *pārens*, *conjux*, *sācerdōs*, *vātēs*, *cōmēs*, *dux*, *cānis*: in Plural generally Masculine.

## § 28. GENDER IN THE SECOND DECLENSION.

*Princ. Rule.*—Substantives of the Second Declension in *ūs, ěr*, are Masculine. Substantives in *um* are Neuter.

*Exc.* Fēmīnīnā stand in *ūs*,  
 Alvūs, arctūs, carbāsūs,  
 Cōlūs, hūmūs, pampīnūs,  
 Vannūs; names of Plants, as pīrūs;  
 Names of Jewels, as sapphīrūs.  
 Neuter, pělāgūs and vīrūs.  
 Vulgūs Neuter commonly,  
 Rarely Masculine, we see.

## § 29. GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION.

*Princ. Rule. I.*—Substantives of the Third Declension are Masculine which end in *o, or, os, er*; also Imparisyllables in *es*.

*Exc.* (1) Substantives in *dō* and *gō*  
 Gēnūs Fēmīnīnum show.  
 But līgō, ordō, praedō, cardō,  
 Are Mascūlā; and Common margō.

(2) Abstract Nouns in *ō* call  
 Fēmīnīnā, one and all:  
 Mascūlā will only be  
 Things that you may touch or see,  
 (As curcūlīō, vespertīlīō,  
 Pūgīō, scīpīō, and pāpīlīō.)  
 With the Nouns that number show,  
 Such as ternīō, sēnīō.

(3) Ēchō Fēmīnīnum name:  
 Cārō (carnīs) is the same.

(4) Fēmīnīnum call arbōr;  
 Neuter aequōr, marmōr, cōr.

(5) Of the Substantives in *os*,  
 Fēmīnīna cōs and dōs:  
 While, of Latin Nouns, alone  
 Neuter are ōs (ossīs), bone,  
 And ōs (ōrīs), mouth: a few  
 Greek in *ōs* are Neuter too.\*

(6) Many Neuters end in *er*,  
 Sīlēr, ācēr, verbēr, vēr,  
 Tūbēr, ūbēr, and cādāvēr,  
 Pīpēr, ītēr, and pāpāvēr.

\* As mēlōs, melody; ěpōs, epic poem.



- (7) Fēmīnīnā, compēs, tēgēs,  
Mercēs, mergēs, quīēs, sēgēs,  
Though their Genitives increase  
With the Neuters reckon aes.

*Princ. Rule. II.*—Substantives of the Third Declension are Feminine which end in *is, as, aus, x*; or in *s* following another Consonant; also Parisyllables in *es*.

- Exc.* (1) Many Nouns in *is* we find  
To the Mascŭlā assigned:  
Amnīs, axīs, caulīs, collīs,  
Clŭnīs, crīnīs, fascīs, follīs,  
Fustīs, ignīs, orbīs, ensīs,  
Pānīs, piscīs, postīs, mensīs,  
Torrīs, unguīs, and cānālīs,  
Vectīs, vermīs, and nātālīs,  
Lāpīs, sanguīs, cŭcŭmīs,  
Pulvīs, cassēs, Mānēs, glīs.
- (2) Chiefly Mascŭlā we view,  
Sometimes Fēmīnīnā too,  
Callīs, sentīs, fŭnīs, fīnīs,  
Torquīs, and, in poets, cīnīs.
- (3) Mascŭlā are ādāmās,  
Ēlēphās, mās, gīgās, ās:  
Vās (vādīs) too as Male is known,  
Vās (vāsīs) as a Neuter Noun.
- (4) Most are Mascŭlā in *ex*:  
Fēmīnīnā, forfex, lex,  
Nex, sŭpellex: Common, pŭmex,  
Imbrex, ōbex, sīlex, rūmex.
- (5) Mascŭlā appear in *ix*,  
Fornix, phoenix, and cālix.
- (6) Mascŭlā are fons and mons,  
Chālybs, hŷdrops, gryps, and pons,  
Rŭdens, torrens, dens, and cliens,  
Fractions of the ās, as triens;  
Add to Mascŭlā trīdens,  
Occīdens and ōriens,  
Bīdens (*hoe*): but bīdens (*sheep*)  
With the Fēmīnīnā keep.
- (7) Mascŭlā are found in *ēs*  
Verrēs and ācīnācēs.

*Princ. Rule.* III.—Substantives of the Third Declension are Neuter which end in *ar, ur, us, Ń, ě, c, l, n, t.*

- Exc.* (1) Mascŭlă are found in *ur,*  
Furfŭr, turtŭr, vultŭr, fŭr.
- (2) Fĕmĭnĭnă, some in *ŭs*  
Keep *ŭ* long, as, servĭtŭs,  
With jŭventŭs, virtŭs, sălŭs,  
Sĕnectŭs, tellŭs, incŭs, pălŭs.
- (3) Also pĕcŭs (pĕcŭdĭs)  
Of the Female Gender is.
- (4) Mascŭlă are found in *us*  
Lĕpŭs (lĕpŏrĭs) and mŭs.
- (5) Mascŭlă in *l* are mŭgĭl,<sup>o</sup>  
Consŭl, săl and sŏl, with pŭgĭl.
- (6) Mascŭlă are rĕn and splĕn,  
Pectĕn, delphĭn, attăgĕn.
- (7) Fĕmĭnĭnă some in *ŏn*;  
Gorgŏn, sindŏn, halcyŏn.

§ 30. GENDER IN THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

*Princ. Rule.*—Substantives of the Fourth Declension in *ŭs* are Masculine, in *ŭ* Neuter.

*Exc.* Fĕmĭnĭnă, trees in *ŭs,*  
With tribŭs, Ńcŭs, portĭcŭs,  
Dŏmŭs, nŭrŭs, sŏcrŭs, Ńnŭs,  
Īdŭs (ĭdŭum) and mănŭs.\*

§ 31. GENDER IN THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

*Princ. Rule.*—Substantives of the Fifth Declension are Feminine.

*Exc.* Dĭĕs in the Singular is Common, in the Plural Masculine.

---

\* See English of Nouns at p. 94.



## ADJECTIVES.

§ 32. A. Adjectives of THREE ENDINGS, in *ūs, ā, um*, or *ēr, ā, um*, follow the Second and First Declensions.

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	
like		like mensă	like bellum	
Dōminūs .	Bōnūs	bōnă	bōnum	<i>good</i>
Păēr . . .	Tĕnĕr	tĕnĕră	tĕnĕrum	<i>tender</i>
Măgister .	Nĭgĕr	nĭgră	nĭgrum	<i>black</i>

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	<b>Bōnūs</b>	<b>bōnă</b>	<b>bōnum</b>	<b>Bōnī</b>	<b>bōnae</b>	<b>bōnă</b>
Voc.	<b>Bōnĕ</b>	<b>bōnă</b>	<b>bōnum</b>	<b>Bōnī</b>	<b>bōnae</b>	<b>bōnă</b>
Acc.	<b>Bōnum</b>	<b>bōnam</b>	<b>bōnum</b>	<b>Bōnōs</b>	<b>bōnās</b>	<b>bōnă</b>
Gen.	<b>Bōnī</b>	<b>bōnae</b>	<b>bōnī</b>	<b>Bōnōrum</b>	<b>bōnārum</b>	<b>bōnōrum</b>
Dat.	<b>Bōnō</b>	<b>bōnae</b>	<b>bōnō</b>	<b>Bōnīs</b>	<b>bōnīs</b>	<b>bōnīs</b>
Abl.	<b>Bōnō</b>	<b>bōnă</b>	<b>bōnō</b>	<b>Bōnīs</b>	<b>bōnīs</b>	<b>bōnīs</b>

	Singular.					
	Tĕnĕr, tĕnĕr-ă, tĕnĕr-um			Nĭgĕr, nĭgr-ă, nĭgr-um		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Acc.	Tĕnĕr- <b>um</b>	<b>am</b>	<b>um</b>	Nĭgr- <b>um</b>	<b>am</b>	<b>um</b>
Gen.	Tĕnĕr- <b>ī</b>	<b>ae</b>	<b>ī</b>	Nĭgr- <b>ī</b>	<b>ae</b>	<b>ī</b>
Dat.	Tĕnĕr- <b>ō</b>	<b>ae</b>	<b>ō</b>	Nĭgr- <b>ō</b>	<b>ae</b>	<b>ō</b>
Abl.	Tĕnĕr- <b>ō</b>	<b>ă</b>	<b>ō</b>	Nĭgr- <b>ō</b>	<b>ă</b>	<b>ō</b>
	Plural.					
N. V.	Tĕnĕr- <b>ī</b>	<b>ae</b>	<b>ă</b>	Nĭgr- <b>ī</b>	<b>ae</b>	<b>ă</b>
Acc.	Tĕnĕr- <b>ōs</b>	<b>ās</b>	<b>ă</b>	Nĭgr- <b>ōs</b>	<b>ās</b>	<b>ă</b>
Gen.	Tĕnĕr- <b>ōrum</b>	<b>ārum</b>	<b>ōrum</b>	Nĭgr- <b>ōrum</b>	<b>ārum</b>	<b>ōrum</b>
D. Abl.	Tĕnĕr- <b>īs</b>	<b>īs</b>	<b>īs</b>	Nĭgr- <b>īs</b>	<b>īs</b>	<b>īs</b>

## Decline:

as bōnūs:  
cārūs, *dear*  
dūblūs, *doubtful*  
dūrūs, *hard*  
jūcundūs, *pleasant*  
mālūs, *bad*  
pallidūs, *pale*.

as tĕnĕr:  
aspĕr, *rough*  
lăcĕr, *torn*  
libĕr, *free*  
mīsĕr, *wretched*  
cornĭgĕr, *horned*  
frūgĭfĕr, *fruitful*.\*

as nĭgĕr:  
aegĕr, *sick*  
ătĕr, *jet-black*  
crĕbĕr, *frequent*  
pulchĕr, *beautiful*  
rŭbĕr, *red*  
săcĕr, *sacred*.

\* And many other Adjectives compounded with the Verbs gĕrō, fĕrō. Dextĕr, *at the right hand, propitious*, is declined either as tĕnĕr or nĭgĕr.

§ 33. B. All other Adjectives follow the Third Declension: as, *měliör*, *better*; *tristis*, *sad*; *fělix*, *happy*; *ingens*, *vast*.

## Singular.

	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
N. V.	<b>Měliör</b>	<b>měliūs</b>	<b>Tristis</b>	<b>tristě</b>
Acc.	<b>Měliörem</b>	<b>měliūs</b>	<b>Tristem</b>	<b>tristě</b>
Gen.	<b>Měliöris</b>		<b>Tristis</b>	
Dat.	<b>Měliöri</b>		<b>Tristi</b>	
Abl.	<b>Měliörě</b> or <b>i</b>		<b>Tristi</b>	

## Plural.

N. V. A.	<b>Měliörēs</b>	<b>měliöra</b>	<b>Tristēs</b>	<b>tristiä</b>
Gen.	<b>Měliörum</b>		<b>Tristium</b>	
D. Abl.	<b>Měliörībūs.</b>		<b>Tristībūs.</b>	

## Singular.

	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
N. V.	<b>Fělix</b>		<b>Ingens</b>	
Acc.	<b>Fělicem</b>	<b>fělix</b>	<b>Ingentem</b>	<b>ingens</b>
Gen.	<b>Fělicis</b>		<b>Ingentis</b>	
Dat.	<b>Fělicī</b>		<b>Ingenti</b>	
Abl.	<b>Fělicī*</b>		<b>Ingenti</b> or <b>ě</b>	

## Plural.

N. V. A.	<b>Fělicēs</b>	<b>fělicĩa</b>	<b>Ingentēs</b>	<b>ingentiä</b>
Gen.	<b>Fělicium</b>		<b>Ingentium</b>	
D. Abl.	<b>Fělicībūs.</b>		<b>Ingentībūs.</b>	

C. Adjectives in *er*, of the Third Declension, have Three Endings in Nom. Sing.: as, N. *cělěr*, *cělěrīs*, *cělěrě*, *swift*; N. *ācěr*, *ācěrīs*, *ācěrě*, *keen*.

## Singular.

N. V.	<b>Cělěr, cělěr-īs, cělěr-ě</b>	<b>Ācěr, ācěr-īs, ācěr-ě</b>
Acc.	Cělěr- <b>em</b>	Ācěr- <b>em</b>
Gen.	Cělěr- <b>īs</b>	Ācěr- <b>īs</b>
D. Abl.	Cělěr- <b>ī</b>	Ācěr- <b>ī</b>

## Plural.

N. V. A.	<b>Cělěr-ēs</b>	<b>Ācěr-ēs</b>	<b>ĩa</b>	<b>ĩa</b>
Gen.	<b>Cělěr-um</b>	<b>Ācěr-um</b>	<b>ium</b>	
D. Abl.	<b>Cělěr-ībūs</b>	<b>Ācěr-ībūs</b>	<b>ibūs</b>	

## Decline :

as *měliör*:  
*audāciör*, *bolder*  
*düriör*, *harder*.

as *fělix*:  
*audax* (*āc-*), *bold*  
*fěrox* (*ōc-*), *haughty*.

as *cělěr*:  
 (none).

as *tristis*:  
*brěvis*, *short*  
*fācilis*, *easy*.

as *ingens*:  
*āmans*, *loving*  
*sāpiens*, *wise*.

as *ācěr*:  
*ālācěr*, *brisk*  
*ēquestěr*, *knightly*.

\* Rarely *ě*.

## § 34. NUMERAL AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

Some Numeral and Pronominal Adjectives form Gen. Sing. in *iūs*, and Dat. Sing. in *ī*: as, *ūnūs*, *one*; *āliūs*, *other*, *another*; *altēr*, *one of two*, *the other*; *ūtēr*, *which of two*.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	<b>Ūnūs</b>	<b>ūnā</b>	<b>ūnum</b>	<b>Ūnī</b>	<b>ūnae</b>	<b>ūnā</b>
Acc.	<b>Ūnum</b>	<b>ūnam</b>	<b>ūnum</b>	<b>Ūnōs</b>	<b>ūnās</b>	<b>ūnā</b>
Gen.	<b>Ūniūs</b>	<b>ūniūs</b>	<b>ūniūs</b>	<b>Ūnōrum</b>	<b>ūnārum</b>	<b>ūnōrum</b>
Dat.	<b>Ūnī</b>	<b>ūnī</b>	<b>ūnī</b>	<b>Ūnīs</b>	<b>ūnīs</b>	<b>ūnīs</b>
Abl.	<b>Ūnō</b>	<b>ūnā</b>	<b>ūnō</b>	<b>Ūnīs</b>	<b>ūnīs</b>	<b>ūnīs</b>
Nom.	<b>Āliūs</b>	<b>āliā</b>	<b>āliūd</b>	<b>Āliī</b>	<b>āliae</b>	<b>āliā</b>
Acc.	<b>Ālium</b>	<b>āliam</b>	<b>āliūd</b>	<b>Āliōs</b>	<b>āliās</b>	<b>āliā</b>
Gen.	<b>Āliūs</b>	<b>āliūs</b>	<b>āliūs</b>	<b>Āliōrum</b>	<b>āliārum</b>	<b>āliōrum</b>
Dat.	<b>Āliī</b>	<b>āliī</b>	<b>āliī</b>	<b>Āliīs</b>	<b>āliīs</b>	<b>āliīs</b>
Abl.	<b>Āliō</b>	<b>āliā</b>	<b>āliō</b>	<b>Āliīs</b>	<b>āliīs</b>	<b>āliīs</b>

## Singular.

Nom.	Altēr, altēr-ā, altēr-um			Ūtēr, ūtr-ā, ūtr-um		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Acc.	Altēr- <b>um</b>	<b>am</b>	<b>um</b>	Ūtr- <b>um</b>	<b>am</b>	<b>um</b>
Gen.	Altēr- <b>iūs</b>	<b>iūs</b>	<b>iūs</b>	Ūtr- <b>iūs</b>	<b>iūs</b>	<b>iūs</b>
Dat.	Altēr- <b>ī</b>	<b>ī</b>	<b>ī</b>	Ūtr- <b>ī</b>	<b>ī</b>	<b>ī</b>
Abl.	Altēr- <b>ō</b>	<b>ā</b>	<b>ō</b>	Ūtr- <b>ō</b>	<b>ā</b>	<b>ō</b>

## Plural.

Nom.	Altēr- <b>ī</b>	<b>ae</b>	<b>ā</b>	Ūtr- <b>ī</b>	<b>ae</b>	<b>ā</b>
Acc.	Altēr- <b>ōs</b>	<b>ās</b>	<b>ā</b>	Ūtr- <b>ōs</b>	<b>ās</b>	<b>ā</b>
Gen.	Altēr- <b>ōrum</b>	<b>ārum</b>	<b>ōrum</b>	Ūtr- <b>ōrum</b>	<b>ārum</b>	<b>ōrum</b>
D. Abl.	Altēr- <b>īs</b>	<b>īs</b>	<b>īs</b>	Ūtr- <b>īs</b>	<b>īs</b>	<b>īs</b>

Decline like *ūnūs*: *ullūs*, *any at all*; *nullūs*, *none*, *no*; *sōlūs*, *alone*; *tōtūs*, *whole*.

Like *ūtēr*: *neutēr*, *neither*; *ūtērquē*, *each* (of two); *ūtērvīs*, *ūterlibēt*, *which you will*; *ūtērcumquē*, *whichever of the two*. The suffixes *-quē*, *-vīs*, *-libēt*, *-cumquē*, are appended to each case-form: as, *ūtēriusquē*, *ūtērvīs*, *ūtērolibēt*, *ūtērcumquē*. *Altērūtēr*, *one or the other*, is usually declined as *ūtēr*. But Gen. *altērūs-ūtēriūs* is found.

	Dů, <i>two</i> .			Trēs, <i>three</i> .	
	Plural.			Plural.	
	M.	F.	N.	M. F.	N.
Nom.	<b>Dů</b>	<b>důae</b>	<b>dů</b>	<b>Trēs</b>	<b>trĩa</b>
Acc.	<b>Důōs or dů</b>	<b>důās</b>	<b>dů</b>	<b>Trēs</b>	<b>trĩa</b>
Gen.	<b>Důōrum</b>	<b>důārum</b>	<b>důōrum</b>	<b>Trĩum</b>	<b>trĩum</b>
D. Abl.	<b>Důōbūs</b>	<b>důābūs</b>	<b>důōbūs.</b>	<b>Trĩbūs</b>	<b>trĩbūs.</b>

Decline as dů: ambō, *both*.

The other Cardinal Numbers (quattuōr, *four*; quinquē, *five*; sex, *six*; septem, *seven*; octō, *eight*; nōvem, *nine*; dēcem, *ten*, &c.; to centum, *a hundred*) are undeclined. Millě, *a thousand*, is an indeclinable Adjective. The Neuter Plural, millĩa, *thousands*, is a Substantive, and declined like Měřĩa.

## COMPARISON.

§ 35. The ADJECTIVE is compared by THREE DEGREES; the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative: as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Dūrūs, <i>hard</i>	dūrĩor, <i>harder</i>	dūrissimūs, <i>hardest</i> .

The Comparative may be formed from the Positive by changing *i* or *is* of the Genitive into *ĩor*.

The Superlative may be formed from the Positive by changing *i* or *is* of the Genitive into *issimūs*: as,

Positive.		Comparative.	Superlative.
Dūrūs, <i>hard</i>	Gen. dūr- <b>ĩ</b>	dūr- <b>ĩor</b>	dūr- <b>issimūs</b>
Brěvis, <i>short</i>	„ brěv- <b>ĩs</b>	brěv- <b>ĩor</b>	brěv- <b>issimūs</b>
Audāx, <i>bold</i>	„ audāc- <b>ĩs</b>	audāc- <b>ĩor</b>	audāc- <b>issimūs.</b>

(1) Adjectives in *-er* form the Superlative by adding *-řimūs* to the Nominative: as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Pulchěr, <i>beautiful</i>	pulchr- <b>ĩor</b>	pulcher- <b>řimūs</b>
Cělěr, <i>swift</i>	cělěr- <b>ĩor</b>	cělěr- <b>řimūs.</b>

Větūs, *ancient*, forms Superl. věter-**řimūs**.

(2) The following form the Superlative by changing *is* into *řimūs*:

Fácilis, <i>easy</i>	Sĩmilĩs, <i>like</i>	Grācĩlis, <i>slender</i>
Difficĩlis, <i>difficult</i>	Dissĩmilĩs, <i>unlike</i>	Hĩmilĩs, <i>lowly.</i>

Superl. fácil-**řimūs**, sĩmil-**řimūs**, grācil-**řimūs**, hĩmil-**řimūs**, &c.

## § 36. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Bõnūs, <i>good</i>	mēļiõr	optīmūs.
Mālūs, <i>bad</i>	pējõr	pessīmūs.
Magnūs, <i>great</i>	mājõr	maxīmūs.
Parvūs, <i>small</i>	mīnõr	mīnīmūs.
Multūs, <i>much</i>	(plūs, Neut.)	plūrīmūs.
Nēquam, <i>worthless</i>	nēquiõr	nēquissīmūs.

Note 1. The Comparative of multūs has no Masc. or Fem. Singular ; but full Plural : Nom. Acc. plūrēs, plūrā, Gen. plūrium, D. Abl. plūrībūs.

Note 2. Divēs, *rich*, often contracts divīt- into dit- : as, Comp. divītõr or ditõr, Superl. divītissīmūs or ditissīmūs.

Note 3. Sēnex, *old* (generally an *old man*), has Comp. sēnõr. Jūvēnīs, *young* (generally a *youth*, Fem. not used), has Comp. jūnõr, Masc. or Fem. But *older* is often nātū mājõr, or mājõr only ; *eldest*, nātū maxīmūs, or maxīmūs ; *younger*, nātū mīnõr, or mīnõr ; *youngest*, nātū mīnīmūs, or mīnīmūs.

Note 4. Adjectives of Position spring from Prepositions :—

Preposition.	Positive Adj.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Ē, ex, <i>out of</i>	extērūs, <i>outside</i>	extērõr	extrēmūs (extīmūs)
Intrā, <i>within</i>	—	intērõr	intīmūs
Sūpēr, <i>above</i>	sūpērūs, <i>high above</i>	sūpērõr	sūprēmūs (summūs)
Infrā, <i>below</i>	infrūs, <i>deep below</i> .	infrõr	infrīmūs (imūs)
Prac, <i>before</i>	—	prõr	prīmūs, <i>first</i>
Post, <i>after</i>	postērūs, <i>next after</i>	postērõr	postrēmūs (postūmūs)
Cītrā, <i>on near side</i>	—	cītērõr	cītīmūs
Ultrā, <i>beyond</i>	—	ultērõr	ultīmūs, <i>last</i>
Prõpē, <i>near</i>	—	prõpõr	proxīmūs
Dē, <i>down from</i>	—	dētērõr, <i>worse</i>	dētērīmūs, <i>worst</i>

Obs. Adjectives in *us* pure\* are compared with mągīs, maxīmē ; as, dūbīūs, *doubtful*, mągīs dūbīūs, maxīmē dūbīūs. But plūs forms plūssīmūs. Adjectives in -dicūs, -ficūs, -võlūs change ūs into Comp. -entõr, Superl. -entissīmūs ; as, magnīficūs, magnīficentõr, magnīficentissīmūs. Ōclõr, *swifter*, ōcissīmūs, has no Positive. Many Adjectives are not compared at all : some have a Comparative without a Superlative, many a Superlative without a Comparative.

## § 37. ADVERBS derived from Adjectives imitate their Comparison, with endings, Comparative ūs, Superlative ē.

	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Adj.	Dignūs, <i>worthy</i>	dignõr	dignissīmūs.
Adv.	Dignē, <i>worthily</i>	digniūs	dignissīmē.
Adj.	Grāvīs, <i>weighty</i>	grāvõr	grāvissīmūs.
Adv.	Grāvītēr, <i>weightily</i>	grāvīūs	grāvissīmē.
a. So :	Saepē, <i>often</i>	saepīūs	saepissīmē.
	Dīū, <i>long</i>	dīūtīūs	dīūtissīmē.
But :	Multum, <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrium.
	Magnõpērē, <i>greatly</i>	mągīs, <i>more</i>	maxīmē.

\* A pure Syllable is one which follows a Vowel.



## PRONOUNS.

§ 38. Personal and Reflexive Pronouns are purely Substantival; the rest are generally Adjectival, but are often used Substantively.

## (1) PERSONAL.

## 1. FIRST PERSON.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	<b>Ěgŏ</b> , <i>I</i>	<b>Nŏs</b> , <i>we</i>
Acc.	<b>Mĕ</b> , <i>me</i>	<b>Nŏs</b> , <i>us</i>
Gen.	<b>Mĕi</b> , <i>of me</i>	<b>Nostrĭ</b> , or <b>Nostrum</b> , <i>of us</i>
Dat.	<b>Mĭhĭ</b> , <i>to or for me</i>	<b>Nŏbĭs</b> , <i>to or for us</i>
Abl.	<b>Mĕ</b> , <i>(with) me</i>	<b>Nŏbĭs</b> , <i>(with) us.</i>

## 2. SECOND PERSON.

	Singular.	Plural.
N. V.	<b>Tŭ</b> , <i>thou</i>	<b>Vŏs</b> , <i>ye</i>
Acc.	<b>Tĕ</b> , <i>thee</i>	<b>Vŏs</b> , <i>you</i>
Gen.	<b>Tŭi</b> , <i>of thee</i>	<b>Vestri</b> , or <b>Vestrum</b> , <i>of you</i>
Dat.	<b>Tĭbĭ</b> , <i>to or for thee</i>	<b>Vŏbĭs</b> , <i>to or for you</i>
Abl.	<b>Tĕ</b> , <i>(with) thee</i>	<b>Vŏbĭs</b> , <i>(with) you.</i>

## (2) REFLEXIVE (THIRD PERSON).

## Singular and Plural.

Nom.	(wanting.)
Acc.	<b>Sĕ</b> (sĕsĕ), <i>himself, herself, itself, or themselves</i>
Gen.	<b>Sŭi</b> , <i>of himself, herself, itself, or themselves</i>
Dat.	<b>Sĭbĭ</b> , <i>to or for himself, herself, itself, or themselves</i>
Abl.	<b>Sĕ</b> (sĕsĕ), <i>(with) himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>

## (3) POSSESSIVE.

As Bŏnŭs, decline :

Mĕŭs, mĕă, mĕum, <i>my, mine.</i>
Tŭŭs, tŭă, tŭum, <i>thy, thine.</i>
Sŭŭs, sŭă, sŭum, <i>his, her, its, their own.</i>
Cŭjŭs, cŭjă, cŭjum, <i>whose ; whose ?</i>

As Nĭgĕr:

Nostĕr, nostră, nostrum, <i>our.</i>
Vestĕr, vestră, vestrum, <i>your.</i>

*Note.* Mĕŭs has Vocative Masculine mĭ. Tŭŭs, sŭŭs, have none.

## (4) DEMONSTRATIVE.

## 1. SIMPLE OR UNEMPHATIC.

Īs, *that* (or *he, she, it*).

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	<b>Īs</b>	<b>ěā</b>	<b>Īd</b>	<b>Īī</b>	<b>ěae</b>	<b>ěā</b>
Acc.	<b>Ěum</b>	<b>ěam</b>	<b>Īd</b>	<b>Ěōs</b>	<b>ěās</b>	<b>ěā</b>
Gen.	<b>Ějūs</b>	<b>ějūs</b>	<b>ějūs</b>	<b>Ěōrum</b>	<b>ěārum</b>	<b>ěōrum</b>
Dat.	<b>Ěī</b>	<b>ěī</b>	<b>ěī</b>		<b>Īīs or ěīs</b>	
Abl.	<b>Ěō</b>	<b>ěā</b>	<b>ěō</b>		<b>Īīs or ěīs</b>	

## 2. EMPHATIC.

Hĭc, *this* (*near me*).

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	<b>Hĭc</b>	<b>haec</b>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>Hī</b>	<b>hae</b>	<b>haec</b>
Acc.	<b>Hunc</b>	<b>hanc</b>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>Hōs</b>	<b>hās</b>	<b>haec</b>
Gen.	<b>Hūjūs</b>	<b>hūjūs</b>	<b>hūjūs</b>	<b>Hōrum</b>	<b>hārum</b>	<b>hōrum</b>
Dat.	<b>Huic</b>	<b>huic</b>	<b>huic</b>	<b>Hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>
Abl.	<b>Hōc</b>	<b>hāc</b>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>Hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>

Illĕ, *that* (*yonder*).

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	<b>Illĕ</b>	<b>illā</b>	<b>illūd</b>	<b>Illī</b>	<b>illae</b>	<b>illā</b>
Acc.	<b>Illum</b>	<b>illam</b>	<b>illūd</b>	<b>Illōs</b>	<b>illās</b>	<b>illā</b>
Gen.	<b>Illīūs</b>	<b>illīūs</b>	<b>illīūs</b>	<b>Illōrum</b>	<b>illārum</b>	<b>illōrum</b>
Dat.	<b>Illī</b>	<b>illī</b>	<b>illī</b>	<b>Illīs</b>	<b>illīs</b>	<b>illīs</b>
Abl.	<b>Illō</b>	<b>illā</b>	<b>illō</b>	<b>Illīs</b>	<b>illīs</b>	<b>illīs</b>

Istĕ, *that* (*near you*), is declined like Illĕ.(5) DEFINITIVE. (Īdem, *same*; ipsĕ, *self*.)

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	<b>Īdem</b>	<b>ěādem</b>	<b>Īdem</b>	<b>Īīdem</b>	<b>ěaedem</b>	<b>ěādem</b>
Acc.	<b>Ěundem</b>	<b>ěandem</b>	<b>Īdem</b>	<b>Ěosdem</b>	<b>ěasdem</b>	<b>ěādem</b>
Gen.	<b>Ějusdem</b>	<b>ějusedem</b>	<b>ėjusedem</b>	<b>Ěōrundem</b>	<b>ěārundem</b>	<b>ěōrundem</b>
Dat.	<b>Ěīdem</b>	<b>ěīdem</b>	<b>ěīdem</b>		<b>Īisdem or ěisdem</b>	
Abl.	<b>Ěōdem</b>	<b>ěādem</b>	<b>ěōdem</b>		<b>Īisdem or ěisdem.</b>	

Ipsĕ is declined like Illĕ, but with Neuter Singular N. Acc. ipsum.  
It forms a Superlative ipsissimūs, *very self*.



(6) RELATIVE. (Quī, *who*, or *which*.)

	Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	<b>Quī</b>	<b>quae</b>	<b>quōd</b>	<b>Quī</b>	<b>quae</b>	<b>quae</b>
Acc.	<b>Quem</b>	<b>quam</b>	<b>quōd</b>	<b>Quōs</b>	<b>quās</b>	<b>quae</b>
Gen.	<b>Cūjūs</b>	<b>cūjūs</b>	<b>cūjūs</b>	<b>Quōrum</b>	<b>quārum</b>	<b>quōrum</b>
Dat.	<b>Cui</b>	<b>cui</b>	<b>cui</b>	<b>Quībūs or quīs</b>		
Abl.	<b>Quō</b>	<b>quā</b>	<b>quō</b>	<b>Quībūs or quīs.</b>		

(7) INTERROGATIVE.

	Singular.		
Nom.	<b>Quīs</b>	<b>(quīs)</b>	<b>quīd</b>
	<b>Quī</b>	<b>quae</b>	<b>quōd</b>
Acc.	<b>Quem</b>	<b>quam</b>	<b>quīd</b>
	<b>Quem</b>	<b>quam</b>	<b>quōd</b>
	<b>&amp;c.</b>	<b>&amp;c.</b>	<b>&amp;c.</b>

\* *who, or what?*

(8) INDEFINITE.

	Singular.		
Nom.	<b>Quīs</b>	<b>quā</b>	<b>quīd</b>
	<b>Quī</b>	<b>quae</b>	<b>quōd</b>
Acc.	<b>Quem</b>	<b>quam</b>	<b>quīd</b>
	<b>Quem</b>	<b>quam</b>	<b>quōd</b>
	<b>&amp;c.</b>	<b>&amp;c.</b>	<b>&amp;c.</b>

\* *any one.*

In the other forms as Relative.

In the other forms as Relative.

Indefinite Pl. Nom. Quī, quae, quā or quae.

(9) COMPOUNDS OF RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, AND INDEFINITE.

1. Quisnam, quidnam; quīnam, quaenam, quodnam, *who, what?*
2. Ecquīs (for en-quīs), ecquā, ecquīd? Ecquī, ecquae, ecquōd, *anyone?* (Interrogative). So Numquīs, siquīs, &c.
3. Ālīquīs, ālīquā, ālīquīd; Ālīquī, ālīquā, ālīquōd, *some one.*
4. Quispiam, quaequam, quippiam (quodpiam), *anyone.*
5. Quisquam, quicquam; Genitive, cūjusquam, &c., *anyone at all.*
6. Quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam), *a certain one.*
7. Quīcumquē, quaecumquē, quodcumquē, *whosoever, whatsoever.*
8. Quisquīs, *whosoever*, quidquīd, *whatsoever.*
9. Quīvis, quaevis, quidvis (quodvis), *any you will.*
10. Quīlibēt, quaelibēt, quidlibēt (quodlibēt), *any you please.*
11. Quisquē, quaequē, quicquē; Quisquē, quaequē, quodquē, *each.* So Ūnusquisquē, ūnaquaequē, ūnumquicquē (-quodquē), *each one.*

a. These Compounds are declined as their Primitives, the undeclined suffix or prefix accompanying each case, as Gen. cūjusnam, ālīcūjūs, cūjuscumquē, &c., &c.

Note. Correlatives include an Interrogative, Demonstrative, Relative, Indefinite, Universals: as, quis?—īs—quī—quīs (ālīquīs)—quīcumquē (quisquīs), &c.

THE PRONOMINAL CORRELATIVES QUALIS, &c.

Interrog.	Demonst.	Relat.	Indefinite.	Univ.
Quālis, <i>of what kind?</i>	tālis, <i>such</i>	quālis, <i>as</i>		quālisicumquē, <i>of what kind soever.</i>
Quantūs, <i>how great?</i>	tantūs, <i>so great</i>	quantūs, <i>as</i>	ālīquantūs, <i>of some size</i>	quantuscumquē, <i>how great soever.</i>
Quōt, <i>how many?</i>	tōt, <i>so many</i>	quōt, <i>as</i>	ālīquōt, <i>some few</i>	quōtcumquē, <i>how many soever.</i>

\* The forms Quīs, quīd, are Substantival; Quī, quōd, Adjectival.

## VERBS.

§ 39. The Verb has two VOICES: (1) the ACTIVE VOICE; as, *āmō*, *I love*: (2) the PASSIVE; as, *āmōr*, *I am loved*.

§ 40. A DEPONENT Verb is chiefly Passive in form, but Active in sense; as, *hortōr*, *I exhort*.

§ 41. Active and Deponent Verbs are either—

- (1) TRANSITIVE, acting on an object: as, *āmō ěum*, *I love him*; or
- (2) INTRANSITIVE, not acting on an object: as, *stō*, *I stand*.

*Obs.* Verbs Intransitive have no personal Passive: see § 76.

§ 42. The Verb has two parts:

I. FINITE. II. INFINITE.

I. The VERB FINITE has three MOODS.

- (1) The INDICATIVE; as, *āmō*, *I love*.
- (2) The CONJUNCTIVE; as, *āmem* (variously rendered: see § 66).
- (3) The IMPERATIVE; as, *āmā*, *love thou*.

§ 43. Time is expressed by TENSES.

There are six Tense-forms of the Verb Finite: the Present, Simple-Future, Imperfect, Perfect, Future-Perfect, and Pluperfect. Other Tenses are formed by the verb *Sum*, *essē* (*to be*), with Participles.

§ 44. Tenses have each (1) two NUMBERS, Singular and Plural; and (2) three PERSONS in each Number.

The First Person speaks: as, *āmō*, *I love*; *āmāmūs*, *we love*.

The Second Person is spoken to: as, *āmās*, *thou lovest*; *āmātīs*, *ye love*.

The Third Person is spoken of: as, *āmāt*, *he loves*; *āmant*, *they love*.

*Obs.* The Pronouns, *ěgō*, *nōs*, *tū*, *vōs*, *īs*, *īi*, are severally implied in the Personal Endings.

§ 45. II. The VERB INFINITE consists of Verb-nouns:

- (1) The ĪNFİNITIVE, having several Tense-forms.
- (2) The GERUND, } Verbal Substantives, which supply Cases
- (3) The two SUPINES, } to the Infinitive.
- (4) PARTICIPLES, or Verbal Adjectives, one of which ends in *dūs*, and is called GERUNDIVE.

§ 46. There are Four regular CONJUGATIONS (three of Vowel Verbs, one of Consonant and U-verbs), of which the PRESENT-STEM and CHARACTER are shown in the Imperative or Infinitive.

ACTIVE VERBS.

		Ind. Pres.	Imperative.	Infinitive.	
1st CONJ.	<b>A</b> -verbs	Āmō	āmĀ	āmĀ-rě	<i>love</i>
2nd CONJ.	<b>E</b> -verbs	Mōnĕō	mōnĒ	mōnĒ-rě	<i>advise</i>
3rd CONJ.	<b>Cons.</b> -verbs	Rĕgō	rĕg-ĕ	rĕg-ĕrě	<i>rule</i>
	<b>U</b> -verbs	Indŭō	indŭ-ĕ	indŭ-ĕrě	<i>put on</i>
4th CONJ.	<b>I</b> -verbs	Audĭō	audĪ	audĪ-rě	<i>hear.</i>

DEPONENT VERBS.

1st CONJ.	<b>A</b> -verbs	Vĕnōr	vĕnĀ-rě	vĕnĀ-rĭ	<i>hunt</i>
2nd CONJ.	<b>E</b> -verbs	Vĕrĕōr	vĕrĒ-rě	vĕrĒ-rĭ	<i>fear</i>
3rd CONJ.	<b>Cons.</b> -verbs	Ūtōr	ūt-ĕrě	ūt-ĭ	<i>use</i>
4th CONJ.	<b>I</b> -verbs	Partiōr	partĪ-rě	partĪ-rĭ	<i>divide.</i>

§ 47. The PRESENT, PERFECT, and SUPINE-STEMS must be known in order to conjugate a Verb : as,

ACTIVE VERBS.			DEPONENT VERBS.	
Pres. Stem.	Perf. Stem.	Sup. Stem.	Pres. Stem.	Sup. Stem.
1. Am <b>A</b> -	āmā <b>V</b> -	āmā <b>T</b> -	Vĕn <b>A</b> -	vĕnā <b>T</b> -
2. Mōn <b>E</b> -	mōn <b>U</b> -	mōnĭ <b>T</b> -	Vĕr <b>E</b> -	vĕrĭ <b>T</b> -
3. Rĕ <b>G</b> -	rex- (reg <b>S</b> -)	rec <b>T</b> -	Ū <b>T</b> -	ŭ <b>S</b> -
4. Aud <b>I</b> -	audĭ <b>V</b> -	audĭ <b>T</b> -	Part <b>I</b> -	partĭ <b>T</b> -

From these the other parts of the Verb may be formed.

DERIVATION OF THE VERB-FORMS.

From PRESENT Stem.	From PERFECT Stem.	From SUPINE Stem.
Present Act. and Pass.	Perfect Act.	Supines
Future Simple A. and P.	Future Perfect Act.	Participle Fut. Act.
Imperf. Act. and Pass.	Pluperfect Act.	Infinitive Fut. Pass.
Imperat. Act. and Pass.	Infinitive Perfect Act.	Participle Perf. Pass.
Inf. Pres. Act. and Pass.		Perfect Pass.
Gerund and Gerundive		Future Perf. Pass.
Participle Pres. Act.		Pluperfect Pass.
		Infinitive Perf. Pass.

a. A Verb, therefore, is sufficiently conjugated thus :

## SHORT FORM FOR ACTIVE VERBS.

	1st CONJ.	2nd CONJ.	3rd CONJ.	4th CONJ.
1 Pers. Pres.	Āmō	Mōnēō	Rēgō	Audiō
Infin. Pres.	āmā-rē	mōnē-rē	rēg-ērē	audi-rē
Perfect	āmāv-ī	mōnū-ī	rex-ī	audi-ī
Supine in <i>um</i>	āmāt-um.	mōnīt-um.	rect-um.	audīt-um.

## SHORT FORM FOR DEPONENT OR PASSIVE VERBS.

	1st CONJ.	2nd CONJ.	3rd CONJ.	4th CONJ.
1 Pers. Pres.	Āmōr	Mōnēōr	Rēgōr	Audiōr
Infin. Pres.	āmā-rī	mōnē-rī	rēg-ī	audi-rī
Partic. Perf.	āmāt-ūs	mōnīt-ūs	rect-ūs	audīt-ūs
Gerundive	āmandūs.	mōnendūs.	rēgendūs.	audiendūs.

b. Or, as a useful exercise, the following parts may often be repeated :

## LONGER FORM FOR ACTIVE VERBS.

	1st CONJ.	2nd CONJ.	3rd CONJ.	4th CONJ.
1 Pers. Pres.	Āmō	Mōnēō	Rēgō	Audiō
2 Pers. Pres.	āmās	mōnēs	rēgis	audīs
Infin. Pres.	āmārē	mōnērē	rēgērē	audi-rē
Perfect	āmāvī	mōnūī	rexī	audi-ī
Ger. in <i>dum</i>	āmandum	mōnendum	rēgendum*	audiendum
„ <i>di</i>	āmandī	mōnendī	rēgendī	audiendī
„ <i>do</i>	āmandō	mōnendō	rēgendō	audiendō
Sup. in <i>um</i>	āmātum	mōnītum	rectum	audītum
„ <i>u</i>	āmātū	mōnītū	rectū	audītū
Part. Pres.	āmāns	mōnens	rēgens	audiens
„ Fut.	āmātūrūs.	mōnītūrūs.	rectūrūs.	audītūrūs.

## LONGER FORM FOR DEPONENT VERBS.

	1st CONJ.	2nd CONJ.	3rd CONJ.	4th CONJ.
1 Pers. Pres.	Vēnōr	Vērēōr	Ūtōr	Partiōr
2 Pers. Pres.	vēnārīs	vērērīs	ūtērīs	partiārīs
Infin. Pres.	vēnārī	vērērī	ūtī	partīrī
Perfect	vēnātūs sum	vērītūs sum	ūsūs sum	partītūs sum
Ger. in <i>dum</i>	vēnandum	vērendum	ūtendum	partiendum
„ <i>di</i>	vēnandī	vērēndī	ūtēndī	partiēndī
„ <i>do</i>	vēnandō	vērēndō	ūtēndō	partiēndō
Gerundive	vēnandūs	vērēndūs	ūtēndūs	partiēndūs
Sup. in <i>um</i>	vēnātum	vērītum	ūsūm	partītum
„ <i>u</i>	vēnātū	vērītū	ūsū	partītū
Part. Pres.	vēnāns	vērēns	ūtēns	partiēns
„ Perf.	vēnātūs	vērītūs	ūsūs	partītūs
„ Fut.	vēnātūrūs.	vērītūrūs.	ūsūrūs.	partītūrūs.

\* The forms *-undum -undūs* are sometimes used in the 3rd and 4th Conjugations. Intransitive Verbs form no Gerundive, and no Supine in *u*.



§ 48. Action and State occur in Time. Time is either simply Present, Past, or Future; or it is Present, Past, or Future with some further relation. The subjoined Scheme shows (for the Active Voice and Indicative Mood) how each of these states is expressed in Latin and English; whence it appears that Latin has not Tense-forms enough to supply one for each state; but that three (āmō, āmāvī, āmābō) are used in two functions each.

	Time.	Indic.	English.	Name of Tense.
Present.	(Simple	āmō . . . .	<i>I love</i>	Present.
	Pres. Relation	āmō . . . .	<i>am loving</i>	
	Past Relation	āmāvī . . . .	<i>have loved</i>	
	Fut. Relation	āmātūrūs sum	<i>am about to love</i>	
Past.	(Simple	āmāvī . . . .	<i>loved</i>	Fütürum Pëřphras-ticum Praesentis. Perfect. Imperfect. Pluperfect. Fütürum Pëřphras-ticum Praetëriti. Future Simple. Future Perfect.
	Pres. Relation	āmābam . . .	<i>was loving</i>	
	Past Relation	āmāveram . .	<i>had loved</i>	
	Fut. Relation	āmātūrūs fūi.	<i>was about to love</i>	
Future.	(Simple	āmābō . . . .	<i>shall love</i>	Fütürum Pëřphras-ticum Fütüri.
	Pres. Relation	āmābō . . . .	<i>shall be loving</i>	
	Past Relation	āmāverō . . .	<i>shall have loved</i>	
	Fut. Relation	āmātūrūs ërō	<i>shall be about to love</i>	

Note 1. The Present, the Futures, and the Present Past (āmāvī, *I have loved*) are called Primary Tenses: the Imperfect, Pluperfect, and Simple Perfect (āmāvī, *I loved*) Historic Tenses.

Note 2. A. The Perfect is formed in several ways:—1. By adding **vī** to the Stem: as, āmāvī, flēvī. 2. By adding **ŭi** (for **vi**) to the Stem or Clipt Stem: \* as, cōlŭi, mōnŭi. 3. By adding **sī** to the Stem or Clipt Stem: as, carpsī, mansī. In this formation Consonants are generally changed (see §81). 4. By prefixing a Reduplication, and adding **i** to the Stem or Clipt Stem. This Reduplication is either the first Consonant and Vowel of the Stem: as, cŭcurrī, mōmordī; or the first Consonant with **ŕ**, in which case the Stem-vowel is usually changed: as, cĕcĕrī (from cĕnō); see §81; § 111 (9). 5. By adding **i** to the Stem or Clipt Stem, with or without change of the Stem-vowel: as, bĭbī, vertī, ĕgī (from ĕgō), fĕvī (from fĕvĕō).

B. The Supine is formed:—1. By adding to the Stem or Clipt Stem **tum**, sometimes **-tum**, and a change of letters often takes place: as, āmātum, cultum, rectum, mōn-ĭ-tum. 2. The change of letters often requires **tum** to become **sum**. See Examples in § 81.

Note 3. The learner should bear in mind that the English given in the following Tables for the Tenses of Verbs is often only one of several possible meanings; especially in the Conjunctive Mood.

§ 49. Before the regular Verbs, it is necessary to conjugate the irregular but important Verb of Being, sum, essĕ, which lends its forms to complete the conjugation of other Verbs.

\* A Clipt Stem is a Stem without its Vowel Character: as, mon- for monE-.

## § 50. FORMATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB SUM, I am (Sum, fūi, esse, futūrus).

## VERB FINITE.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Future Simple.	<p>S. <i>Sum, I am</i> <i>ēs, thou art</i> <i>est, he is</i></p> <p>Pl. <i>sūmūs, we are</i> <i>estīs, ye are</i> <i>sunt, they are.</i></p> <p>S. <i>ērō, I shall</i> <i>erīs, thou wilt</i> <i>erit, he will</i></p> <p>Pl. <i>ērīmūs, we shall</i> <i>erītīs, ye will</i> <i>erunt, they will</i></p>	<p><i>sim, I may</i> <i>sīs, thou mayst</i> <i>sit, he may</i> <i>simūs, we may</i> <i>sītīs, ye may</i> <i>sint, they may</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>be.</i></p>	<p><i>ēs, be thou</i></p> <p><i>ēstē, be ye.</i></p> <p><i>estō, thou must be</i> <i>estō, he must be</i></p> <p><i>estōtē, ye must be</i> <i>suntō, they must be.</i></p>
Imperfect.	<p>S. <i>eram, I was</i> <i>erās, thou wast</i> <i>erāt, he was</i></p> <p>Pl. <i>erāmūs, we were</i> <i>erātīs, ye were</i> <i>erant, they were.</i></p>	<p><i>essem vel forem, I might</i> <i>esses v. foreēs, thou mightst</i> <i>essēt v. foret, he might</i> <i>essēmūs v. foremūs, we might</i> <i>essētīs v. foretīs, ye might</i> <i>essent v. forent, they might</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>be.</i></p>	

<p>Perfect.</p>	<p>S. <i>fū, I have</i>  <i>fūistū, thou hast</i>  <i>fūit, he has</i>  <i>fūimūs, we have</i>  <i>fūistis, ye have</i>  <i>fūerunt vel fūerē, they have</i></p> <p>Pl.</p>	<p>* been.</p> <p><i>fūerim, I may</i>  <i>fūeris, thou mayst</i>  <i>fūerit, he may</i>  <i>fūerimūs, we may</i>  <i>fūeritis, ye may</i>  <i>fūerint, they may</i></p> <p>have been.</p>	<p>VERB INFINITIVE.</p> <p>Infinitive Present and Imperfect.  <i>ēssē, to be.</i></p> <p>Infinitive Perfect and Pluperfect.  <i>fūissē, to have been.</i></p> <p>Infinitive Future.  <i>forē v. fūtūrūs essē, to be about to be.</i></p> <p>Gerunds.  <i>None.</i></p> <p>Supines.  <i>None.</i></p> <p>Participle Present.  <i>None.</i></p> <p>Participle Future.  <i>fūtūrūs, about to be.</i></p> <p>Fūtūrūs may be conjugated with all the tenses of sum : see § 64.</p>
<p>Future Perfect.</p>	<p>S. <i>fūerō, I shall</i>  <i>fūeris, thou wilt</i>  <i>fūerit, he will</i>  <i>fūerimūs, we shall</i>  <i>fūeritis, ye will</i>  <i>fūerint, they will</i></p> <p>Pl.</p>	<p>have been.</p>	
<p>Pluperfect.</p>	<p>S. <i>fūeram, I had</i>  <i>fūerās, thou hadst</i>  <i>fūerāt, he had</i>  <i>fūerāmūs, we had</i>  <i>fūerātis, ye had</i>  <i>fūerant, they had</i></p> <p>Pl.</p>	<p>been.</p> <p><i>fūissem, I should</i>  <i>fūissēs, thou wouldst</i>  <i>fūissēt, he would</i>  <i>fūissēmūs, we should</i>  <i>fūissētis, ye would</i>  <i>fūissent, they would</i></p> <p>have been.</p>	

Like Sum decline its compounds absūm, adsum, dēsum, insum, intersum, obsum, praesum, prōsum, subsum, sūpersum. Prōsum takes *d* before *e*; as, Prōsum, prōdēs, prōdēt, prōsumūs, prōdētis, prōsunt. Absum has Pres. Part. absens; praesum, praesens. Possum will be noticed hereafter.

\* Or, 'I was, thou wast,' &c.

THE FIRST CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.  
VERB FINITE.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Future Simple.	<p>S. <i>Āmō, I love</i>  <i>āmās, thou lovest</i>  <i>āmāt, he loves</i>                      Pl. <i>āmāmūs, we love</i>  <i>āmātīs, ye love</i>  <i>āmānt, they love.</i></p> <p>S. <i>āmābō, I shall</i>  <i>āmābīs, thou wilt</i>  <i>āmābīt, he will</i>                      Pl. <i>āmābīmūs, we shall</i>  <i>āmābītīs, ye will</i>  <i>āmābunt, they will</i></p>	<p><i>āmem, I may</i>  <i>āmēs, thou mayst</i>  <i>āmēt, he may</i>  <i>āmēmūs, we may</i>  <i>āmētīs, ye may</i>  <i>āmēnt, they may</i></p> <p><i>āmārem, I might</i>  <i>āmārēs, thou mightst</i>  <i>āmārēt, he might</i>  <i>āmārēmūs, we might</i>  <i>āmārētīs, ye might</i>  <i>āmārent, they might</i></p>	<p><i>āmā, love thou</i>  <i>āmātē, love ye.</i></p> <p><i>āmātō, thou</i>  <i>āmātō, he</i>  <i>āmātōtē, ye</i>  <i>āmāntō, they</i></p> <p><i>must love.</i></p>



INFINITIVE.

- Inf. Pres. Imp. . . . . *āmārē, to love.*
- Inf. Perf. Plup. *āmāvissē, to have loved.*
- Inf. Fut. . . . . *āmātūrūs essē, to be about to love.*
- Ger. Nom. Ac. *āmāndum, loving.*
- Ger. Gen. . . . . *āmāndī, of loving.*
- Ger. Dat. Abl. *āmāndō, for or by loving.*
- Sup. in *im.* . . . . *āmātum, to love.*
- Sup. in *u.* . . . . *āmātū, in loving, or to be loved.*
- Part. Pres. . . . . *āmans, loving.*
- Part. Fut. . . . . *āmātūrūs, about to love.*

<p>Perfect.</p> <p>S. <i>āmāvī, I loved*</i>  <i>āmāvistī, thou lovedst</i>  <i>āmāvīt, he loved</i></p> <p>Pl. <i>āmāvīmūs, we loved</i>  <i>āmāvistīs, ye loved</i>  <i>āmāv-ērunt v. āmāv-ērē, they loved.</i></p>	<p>Future Perfect.</p> <p>S. <i>āmāvērō, I shall</i>  <i>āmāvērīs, thou wilt</i>  <i>āmāvērīt, he will</i></p> <p>Pl. <i>āmāvērīmūs, we shall</i>  <i>āmāvērītīs, ye will</i>  <i>āmāvērint, they will</i></p>	<p>Pluperfect.</p> <p>S. <i>āmāvēram, I had</i>  <i>āmāvērās, thou hadst</i>  <i>āmāvērāt, he had</i></p> <p>Pl. <i>āmāvērāmūs, we had</i>  <i>āmāvērātīs, ye had</i>  <i>āmāvērant, they had</i></p>
<p><i>āmāvērīm, I may</i>  <i>āmāvērīs, thou mayst</i>  <i>āmāvērīt, he may</i>  <i>āmāvērīmūs, we may</i>  <i>āmāvērītīs, ye may</i>  <i>āmāvērint, they may</i></p>	<p><i>āmāvissem, I should</i>  <i>āmāvissēs, thou wouldst</i>  <i>āmāvissēt, he would</i>  <i>āmāvissēmūs, we should</i>  <i>āmāvissētīs, ye would</i>  <i>āmāvissent, they would</i></p>	<p><i>āmāvērēt, he would</i>  <i>āmāvērētīs, ye would</i>  <i>āmāvērēt, they would</i></p>

\* Or, 'I have loved, thou hast loved,' &c.

THE SECOND CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.  
VERB FINITE.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Future Simple.	<p>S. mōnēbō, <i>I shall</i> mōnēbīs, <i>thou wilt</i> mōnēbīt, <i>he will</i> Pl. mōnēbimūs, <i>we shall</i> mōnēbītīs, <i>ye will</i> mōnēbunt, <i>they will</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>advise.</i></p>	<p>mōnēam, <i>I may</i> mōnēās, <i>thou mayst</i> mōnēāt, <i>he may</i> mōnēamūs, <i>we may</i> mōnēātīs, <i>ye may</i> mōnēant, <i>they may</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>advise.</i></p>	<p>mōnē, <i>advise thou</i> mōnētē, <i>advise ye.</i></p> <p>mōnētō, <i>thou</i> mōnētō, <i>he</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>must advise.</i></p> <p>mōnētōtē, <i>ye</i> mōnentō, <i>they</i></p>
Imperfect.	<p>S. mōnēbam, <i>I was</i> mōnēbās, <i>thou wast</i> mōnēbāt, <i>he was</i> Pl. mōnēbāmūs, <i>we were</i> mōnēbātīs, <i>ye were</i> mōnēbant, <i>they were</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>advising.</i></p>	<p>mōnērem, <i>I might</i> mōnērēs, <i>thou mightst</i> mōnērēt, <i>he might</i> mōnērēmūs, <i>we might</i> mōnērētīs, <i>ye might</i> mōnērēnt, <i>they might</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>advise.</i></p>	

VERB INFINITIVE.

Inf. Pres. Imp. mōnērē, to advise.  
 Inf. Perf. Plup. mōnūissē, to have advised.

Inf. Fut. . . mōnitūrūs essē, to be about to advise.

Ger. Nom. Ac. mōnendum, advising.

Ger. Gen. . . mōnendī, of advising.

Ger. Dat. Abl. mōnendō, for or by advising.

Sup. in *um* . mōnitum, to advise.

Sup. in *u* . . mōnitū, in advising or to be advised.

Part. Pres. . . mōnens, advising.

Part. Fut. . . mōnitūrūs, about to advise.

mōnūerim, I may  
 mōnūerīs, thou mayst  
 mōnūerīt, he may  
 mōnūerīmūs, we may  
 mōnūerītīs, ye may  
 mōnūerint, they may  
 } have advised.

mōnūissem, I should  
 mōnūisēs, thou wouldst  
 mōnūisēt, he would  
 mōnūisēmūs, we should  
 mōnūisētīs, ye would  
 mōnūissent, they would  
 } have advised.

S. mōnūi, I advised\*  
 mōnūisī, thou advisedst  
 mōnūit, he advised  
 Pl. mōnūimūs, we advised  
 mōnūisītīs, ye advised  
 mōnū-erunt v. mōnū-erē,  
 they advised.

S. mōnūerō, I shall  
 mōnūerīs, thou wilt  
 mōnūerīt, he will  
 Pl. mōnūerīmūs, we shall  
 mōnūerītīs, ye will  
 mōnūerint, they will  
 } have advised.

S. mōnūeram, I had  
 mōnūerās, thou hadst  
 mōnūerāt, he had  
 Pl. mōnūerāmūs, we had  
 mōnūerātīs, ye had  
 mōnūerant, they had  
 } advised.

Perfect.

Future Perfect.

Pluperfect.

\* Or, 'I have advised,' &c.

§ 53. THE THIRD CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.  
VERB FINITE.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
S. Rëgō, <i>I rule</i> rëgis, <i>thou rulest</i> rëgīt, <i>he rules</i> Pl. rëgimūs, <i>we rule</i> rëgītīs, <i>ye rule</i> rëgunt, <i>they rule.</i>	rëgam, <i>I may</i> rëgās, <i>thou mayst</i> rëgāt, <i>he may</i> rëgāmūs, <i>we may</i> rëgātīs, <i>ye may</i> rëgant, <i>they may</i>	rëgō, <i>thou</i> rëgītō, <i>he</i> rëgītōtē, <i>ye</i> rëguntō, <i>they</i>	rëgē, <i>rule thou*</i> rëgītē, <i>rule ye.</i>
S. rëgam, <i>I shall</i> rëgēs, <i>thou wilt</i> rëgēt, <i>he will</i> Pl. rëgēmūs, <i>we shall</i> rëgētīs, <i>ye will</i> rëgent, <i>they will</i>	rëgērem, <i>I might</i> rëgērēs, <i>thou mightst</i> rëgērēt, <i>he might</i> rëgērēmūs, <i>we might</i> rëgērētīs, <i>ye might</i> rëgērent, <i>they might</i>	rëgēm, <i>I was</i> rëgēbās, <i>thou wast</i> rëgēbāt, <i>he was</i> Pl. rëgēbāmūs, <i>we were</i> rëgēbātīs, <i>ye were</i> rëgēbant, <i>they were</i>	rëgītō, <i>thou</i> rëgītō, <i>he</i> rëgītōtē, <i>ye</i> rëguntō, <i>they</i> } <i>must rule.</i>
Imperfect.	rëgēm, <i>I might</i> rëgērēs, <i>thou mightst</i> rëgērēt, <i>he might</i> rëgērēmūs, <i>we might</i> rëgērētīs, <i>ye might</i> rëgērent, <i>they might</i>	rëgēm, <i>I was</i> rëgēbās, <i>thou wast</i> rëgēbāt, <i>he was</i> Pl. rëgēbāmūs, <i>we were</i> rëgēbātīs, <i>ye were</i> rëgēbant, <i>they were</i>	rëgēt, <i>he will</i> rëgēmūs, <i>we shall</i> rëgētīs, <i>ye will</i> rëgent, <i>they will</i> } <i>rule.</i>

VERB INFINITIVE.

Inf. Pres. Imp. *rĕgĕrĕ, to rule.*  
 Inf. Perf. Plup. *rĕxissĕ, to have ruled.*  
 Inf. Fut. . . *rectŭrŭs essĕ, to be*

*about to rule.*

Ger. Nom. Ac. *rĕgendum, ruling.*

Ger. Gen. . . *rĕgendĭ, of ruling.*

Ger. Dat. Abl. *rĕgendō, for or by*  
*ruling.*

Sup. in *um* . *rectum, to rule.*

Sup. in *u* . . *rectŭ, in ruling, or to*  
*be ruled.*

Part. Pres. . *rĕgens, ruling.*

Part. Fut. . *rectŭrŭs, about to*  
*rule.*

*rĕxĕrim, I may*  
*rĕxĕrĭs, thou mayst*  
*rĕxĕrĭt, he may*  
*rĕxĕrĭmŭs, we may*  
*rĕxĕrĭtis, ye may*  
*rĕxĕrint, they may*

*have*  
*ruled.*

*rĕxissem, I should*  
*rĕxissĕs, thou wouldst*  
*rĕxissĕt, he would*  
*rĕxissĕmŭs, we should*  
*rĕxissĕtis, ye would*  
*rĕxissent, they would*

*have*  
*ruled.*

S. *rĕxĭ, I ruled†*  
*rĕxistĭ, thou ruledst*  
*rĕxit, he ruled*  
 Pl. *rĕximŭs, we ruled*  
*rĕxistĭs, ye ruled* [*ruled.*]  
*rĕx-erunt vĕl rex-ĕrĕ, they*

S. *rĕxĕrō, I shall*  
*rĕxĕrĭs, thou wilt*  
*rĕxĕrĭt, he will*  
 Pl. *rĕxĕrĭmŭs, we shall*  
*rĕxĕrĭtis, ye will*  
*rĕxĕrint, they will*

*have*  
*ruled.*

S. *rĕxĕram, I had*  
*rĕxĕrās, thou hadst*  
*rĕxĕrāt, he had*  
 Pl. *rĕxĕrāmŭs, we had*  
*rĕxĕrātĭs, ye had*  
*rĕxĕrant, they had*

*ruled.*

\* *Faciō, dicō, dŭcō*, make Imperative Present Second Person, *fāc, dīc, dŭc.*  
 † Or, 'I have ruled,' &c.



## VERB FINITE.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Future Simple.	<p>S. audīō, I hear audīs, thou hearest audīt, he hears</p> <p>Pl. audimūs, we hear audītis, ye hear audiunt, they hear.</p> <p>S. audiam, I shall audies, thou wilt audiet, he will</p> <p>Pl. audiemūs, we shall audietis, ye will audient, they will</p>	<p>audiam, I may audiās, thou mayst audiāt, he may</p> <p>audiamūs, we may audiātis, ye may audiant, they may</p> <p>audire, I might audirēs, thou mightst audirēt, he might</p> <p>audiremūs, we might audirētis, ye might audirent, they might</p>	<p>audi, hear thou</p> <p>audītē, hear ye.</p> <p>audītō, thou audītō, he</p> <p>audītōtē, ye audiuntō, they</p> <p style="text-align: right;">} must hear.</p>
Imperfect.	<p>S. audiēbam, I was audiēbās, thou wast audiēbāt, he was</p> <p>Pl. audiēbāmūs, we were audiēbātis, ye were audiēbant, they were</p>	<p>audirem, I might audirēs, thou mightst audirēt, he might</p> <p>audiremūs, we might audirētis, ye might audirent, they might</p>	



Perfect.	<p>S. audīvī, <i>I heard</i>*  audīvistī, <i>thou heardst</i>  audīvīt, <i>he heard</i>  Pl. audīvīmūs, <i>we heard</i>  audīvistīs, <i>ye heard</i>  audīv-ērunt v. audīv-ērē,  <i>they heard.</i></p>	<p>audīvērīm, <i>I may</i>  audīvērīs, <i>thou mayst</i>  audīvērīt, <i>he may</i>  audīvērīmūs, <i>we may</i>  audīvērītīs, <i>ye may</i>  audīvērīnt, <i>they may</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>have heard.</i></p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>VERB INFINITE.</b></p> <p>Inf. Pres. Imp. audīrē, <i>to hear.</i>  Inf. Perf. Plup. audīvisse, <i>to have heard.</i>  Inf. Fut. . . . audītūrūs esse, <i>to be about to hear.</i></p>
Future Perfect.	<p>S. audīvērō, <i>I shall</i>  audīvērīs, <i>thou wilt</i>  audīvērīt, <i>he will</i>  Pl. audīvērīmūs, <i>we shall</i>  audīvērītīs, <i>ye will</i>  audīvērīnt, <i>they will</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>have heard.</i></p>		<p>Ger. Nom. Ac. audiendum, <i>hearing.</i>  Ger. Gen. . . . audiendī, <i>of hearing.</i>  Ger. Dat. Abl. audiendō, <i>for or by hearing.</i></p>
Pluperfect.	<p>S. audīvērām, <i>I had</i>  audīvērās, <i>thou hadst.</i>  audīvērāt, <i>he had</i>  Pl. audīvērāmūs, <i>we had</i>  audīvērātīs, <i>ye had</i>  audīvērānt, <i>they had</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>heard.</i></p>	<p>audivissem, <i>I should</i>  audivissēs, <i>thou wouldst</i>  audivissēt, <i>he would</i>  audivissēmūs, <i>we should</i>  audivissētīs, <i>ye would</i>  audivissent, <i>they would</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;">} <i>have heard.</i></p>	<p>Sup. in <i>um</i> . . . auditum, <i>to hear.</i>  Sup. in <i>u</i> . . . auditū, <i>in hearing, or to be heard.</i>  Part. Pres. . . . audiens, <i>hearing.</i>  Part. Fut. . . . audītūrūs, <i>about to hear.</i></p>

\* Or, 'I have heard,' &amp;c.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Future Simple.	<p>S. <i>Āmor, I am</i>  <i>āmā-rīs vėl -rē, thou art</i>  <i>āmātūr, he is</i></p> <p>Pl. <i>āmāmūr, we are</i>  <i>āmāmīnī, ye are</i>  <i>āmāntūr, they are</i></p>	<p><i>āmēr, I may</i>  <i>āmē-rīs vėl -rē, thou mayst</i>  <i>āmētūr, he may</i>  <i>āmēmūr, we may</i>  <i>āmēmīnī, ye may</i>  <i>āmētūr, they may</i></p>	<p><i>āmārē, be thou</i></p> <p><i>āmāmīnī, be ye</i></p> <p><i>āmātōr, thou</i></p> <p><i>āmātōr, he</i></p> <p><i>āmāntōr, they</i></p>
Imperfect.	<p>S. <i>āmābōr, I shall</i>  <i>āmābē-rīs vėl -rē, thou</i>  <i>wilt</i></p> <p>Pl. <i>āmābītūr, he will</i>  <i>āmābīmūr, we shall</i>  <i>āmābīmīnī, ye will</i>  <i>āmābuntūr, they will</i></p>	<p><i>āmārēr, I might</i>  <i>āmārē-rīs vėl -rē, thou</i>  <i>mightst</i>  <i>āmārētūr, he might</i>  <i>āmārēmūr, we might</i>  <i>āmārēmīnī, ye might</i>  <i>āmārēntūr, they might</i></p>	<p><i>āmātōr, thou</i></p> <p><i>āmātōr, he</i></p> <p><i>āmāntōr, they</i></p>

<p>Perfect.</p>	<p>S. <i>ămătūs sum, I was</i>  <i>ămătūs eş, thou wast</i>  <i>ămătūs est, he was</i>  <i>Pl. ămătī sūmūs, we were</i>  <i>ămătī estīs, ye were</i>  <i>ămătī sunt, they were</i></p>	<p><i>ămătūs sim, I may</i>  <i>ămătūs sīs, thou mayst</i>  <i>ămătūs sīt, he may</i>  <i>ămătī sīmūs, we may</i>  <i>ămătī sitīs, ye may</i>  <i>ămătī sint, they may</i></p> <p><i>have been loved.</i></p>
<p>Future Perfect.</p>	<p>S. <i>ămătūs őrō, I shall</i>  <i>ămătūs őrīs, thou wilt</i>  <i>ămătūs őrīt, he will</i>  <i>Pl. ămătī őrīmūs, we shall</i>  <i>ămătī őrīčīs, ye will</i>  <i>ămătī őrunt, they will</i></p>	<p><i>ămătūs essem, I should</i>  <i>ămătūs essēs, thou wouldst</i>  <i>ămătūs essēt, he would</i>  <i>ămătī essēmūs, we should</i>  <i>ămătī essētīs, ye would</i>  <i>ămătī essent, they would</i></p> <p><i>have been loved.</i></p>
<p>Pluperfect.</p>	<p>S. <i>ămătūs őrām, I had</i>  <i>ămătūs őrās, thou hadst</i>  <i>ămătūs őrāt, he had</i>  <i>Pl. ămătī őrāmūs, we had</i>  <i>ămătī őrātīs, ye had</i>  <i>ămătī őrant, they had</i></p>	<p><i>ămătūs őrām, I had</i>  <i>ămătūs őrās, thou hadst</i>  <i>ămătūs őrāt, he had</i>  <i>ămătī őrāmūs, we had</i>  <i>ămătī őrātīs, ye had</i>  <i>ămătī őrant, they had</i></p>

VERB INFINITE.

- Inf. Pres. Imp. *ămārī, to be loved.\**  
 Inf. Perf. Plup. *ămătūs essē, to have been loved.*  
 Inf. Fut. . . *ămătum őrī.*  
 Part. Perf. . . *ămătūs, loved.*  
 Gerundive. . . *ămandūs, meet to be loved.*

\* The ancient ending of Infinitive Present Passive was *ier*: as, *ămārier*; and this form is sometimes used by poets.

§ 56. THE SECOND CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.  
VERB FINITE.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Future Simple.	<p>S. mōnēbōr, <i>I shall</i> mōnēbē-rīs v. -rē, <i>thou</i> <i>wilt</i> mōnēbītūr, <i>he will</i> Pl. mōnēbīmūr, <i>we shall</i> mōnēbīmīnī, <i>ye will</i> mōnēbuntūr, <i>they will</i></p>	<p>mōnēār, <i>I may</i> mōnēā-rīs v. -rē, <i>thou mayst</i> mōnēātūr, <i>he may</i> mōnēāmūr, <i>we may</i> mōnēāmīnī, <i>ye may</i> mōnēantūr, <i>they may</i></p>	<p>mōnētōr, <i>thou</i> mōnētōr, <i>he</i> mōnentōr, <i>they</i></p>
Imperfect.	<p>S. mōnēbār, <i>I was</i> mōnēbā-rīs v. -rē, <i>thou</i> <i>wast</i> mōnēbātūr, <i>he was</i> Pl. mōnēbāmūr, <i>we were</i> mōnēbāmīnī, <i>ye were</i> mōnēbantūr, <i>they were</i></p>	<p>mōnērēr, <i>I might</i> mōnērē-rīs v. -rē, <i>thou</i> <i>mightst</i> mōnērētūr, <i>he might</i> mōnērēmūr, <i>we might</i> mōnērēmīnī, <i>ye might</i> mōnērētūr, <i>they might</i></p>	<p>mōnērē, <i>be thou</i> mōnēmīnī, <i>be ye</i></p>

} *advised.*

} *must be advised.*

} *be advised.*

} *be advised.*

} *advised.*

} *be advised.*

} *being advised.*

VERB INFINITE.

Inf. Pres. Imp. mōnērī, *to be advised.*  
 Inf. Perf. Plup. mōñtūs eßē, *to have been advised.*  
 Inf. Fut. . . mōñtum īrī.  
 Part. Perf. . mōñtūs, *advised.*  
 Gerundive . mōnendūs, *meet to be advised.*

mōñtūs sim, *I may*  
 mōñtūs sis, *thou mayst*  
 mōñtūs sīt, *he may*  
 mōñtī simūs, *we may*  
 mōñtī sītīs, *ye may*  
 mōñtī sint, *they may*

have been advised.

mōñtūs essem, *I should*  
 mōñtūs eßēs, *thou wouldst*  
 mōñtūs eßēt, *he would*  
 mōñtī eßēmūs, *we should*  
 mōñtī eßētīs, *ye would*  
 mōñtī eßent, *they would*

have been advised.

S. mōñtūs sum, *I was*  
 mōñtūs eß, *thou wast*  
 mōñtūs est, *he was*  
 Pl. mōñtī sumūs, *we were*  
 mōñtī eßtīs, *ye were*  
 mōñtī sunt, *they were*

advised.

S. mōñtūs eřō, *I shall*  
 mōñtūs eřīs, *thou wilt*  
 mōñtūs eřīt, *he will*  
 Pl. mōñtī eřimūs, *we shall*  
 mōñtī eřītīs, *ye will*  
 mōñtī eřunt, *they will*

have been advised.

S. mōñtūs eřam, *I had*  
 mōñtūs eřās, *thou hadst*  
 mōñtūs eřāt, *he had*  
 Pl. mōñtī eřāmūs, *we had*  
 mōñtī eřātīs, *ye had*  
 mōñtī eřant, *they had*

been advised.

Perfect.

Future Perfect.

Pluperfect.



Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Future Simple.	<p>S. rëgär, I shall rëgë-ris v. -rë, thou wilt rëgëtür, he will</p> <p>Pl. rëgëmür, we shall rëgëminî, ye will rëgëntür, they will</p>	<p>rëgär, I may rëgä-ris v. -rë, thou mayst rëgätür, he may rëgämür, we may rëgäminî, ye may rëgantür, they may</p>	<p>rëgërë, be thou rëgëminî, be ye</p> <p>rëgõtör, thou rëgõtör, he rëgüntör, they</p>
Imperfect.	<p>S. rëgëbär, I was rëgëbä-ris vël -rë, thou wast</p> <p>rëgëbätür, he was Pl. rëgëbämür, we were rëgëbamî, ye were rëgëbantür, they were</p>	<p>rëgërër, I might rëgërë-ris v. -rë, thou mightst rëgërëtür, he might rëgërëmür, we might rëgërëminî, ye might rëgërentür, they might</p>	<p>rëgërë, be ruled. rëgërëtür, be ruled. rëgërëmür, be ruled.</p>



VERB INFINITIVE.

Inf. Pres. Imp. *reġi, to be ruled.*  
 Inf. Perf. Plup. *rectūs esse, to have been ruled.*  
 Inf. Fut. . . *rectum iri.*  
 Part. Perf. . *rectūs, ruled.*  
 Gerundive . . *reġendūs, meet to be ruled.*

<p>Perfect.</p>	<p>S. <i>rectūs sum, I was</i>  <i>rectūs es, thou wast</i>  <i>rectūs est, he was</i>                  Pl. <i>recti sumūs, we were</i>  <i>recti estis, ye were</i>  <i>recti sunt, they were</i></p>	<p><i>have been ruled.</i></p> <p><i>rectūs sim, I may</i>  <i>rectūs sis, thou mayst</i>  <i>rectūs sit, he may</i>  <i>recti simūs, we may</i>  <i>recti sitis, ye may</i>  <i>recti sint, they may</i></p>
<p>Future Perfect.</p>	<p>S. <i>rectūs erō, I shall</i>  <i>rectūs eris, thou wilt</i>  <i>rectūs erit, he will</i>                  Pl. <i>recti erimūs, we shall</i>  <i>recti eritis, ye will</i>  <i>recti erunt, they will</i></p>	<p><i>have been ruled.</i></p>
<p>Pluperfect.</p>	<p>S. <i>rectūs eram, I had</i>  <i>rectūs eras, thou hadst</i>  <i>rectūs erat, he had</i>                  Pl. <i>recti eramūs, we had</i>  <i>recti eratis, ye had</i>  <i>recti erant, they had</i></p>	<p><i>been ruled.</i></p> <p><i>rectūs essem, I should</i>  <i>rectūs esses, thou wouldst</i>  <i>rectūs esset, he would</i>  <i>recti essemūs, we should</i>  <i>recti essetis, ye would</i>  <i>recti essent, they would</i></p> <p><i>have been ruled.</i></p>

	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.	
Present Tense.	<p>S. Audiör, <i>I am</i> audi-ris vel -rë, <i>thou art</i> audütür, <i>he is</i></p> <p>Pl. audimür, <i>we are</i> audimini, <i>ye are</i> audüntür, <i>they are</i></p>	<p>audiär, <i>I may</i> audiä-ris v. -rë, <i>thou mayst</i> audiätür, <i>he may</i> audiämür, <i>we may</i> audiämini, <i>ye may</i> audiäntür, <i>they may</i></p>	<p>audirë, <i>be thou</i> audimini, <i>be ye</i></p>	<p>auditör, <i>thou</i> auditör, <i>he</i> audüntör, <i>they</i></p>
Future Simple.	<p>S. audiär, <i>I shall</i> audië-ris v. -rë, <i>thou wilt</i> audieütür, <i>he will</i></p> <p>Pl. audiämür, <i>we shall</i> audiämini, <i>ye will</i> audientür, <i>they will</i></p>		<p>auditör, <i>thou</i> auditör, <i>he</i> audüntör, <i>they</i></p>	<p>auditör, <i>thou</i> auditör, <i>he</i> audüntör, <i>they</i></p>
Imperfect.	<p>S. audiebär, <i>I was</i> audiëbä-ris v. -rë, <i>thou</i> <i>wast</i></p> <p>Pl. audiebämür, <i>we were</i> audiebämini, <i>ye were</i> audiebäntür, <i>they were</i></p>	<p>audirër, <i>I might</i> audië-ris v. -rë, <i>thou mightst</i> audirëtür, <i>he might</i> audirämür, <i>we might</i> audirämini, <i>ye might</i> audirëntür, <i>they might</i></p>	<p>audirë, <i>be heard.</i></p>	<p>audirë, <i>be heard.</i></p>

## VERB INFINITIVE.

Inf. Pres. Imp. audiri, to be heard.

Inf. Perf. Plup. auditus esse, to have  
been heard.

Inf. Fut. . . . auditum iri.

Part. Perf. . . . auditus, heard.

Gerundive . . . audiendus, meet to  
be heard.

auditus sim, I may  
auditus sis, thou mayst  
auditus sit, he may  
auditi simus, we may  
auditi sitis, ye may  
auditi sint, they may

have been heard.

auditus essem, I should  
auditus esses, thou wouldst  
auditus esset, he would  
auditi essemus, we should  
auditi essetis, ye would  
auditi essent, they would

have been heard.

S. auditus sum, I was  
auditus es, thou wast  
auditus est, he was  
Pl. auditi sumus, we were  
auditi estis, ye were  
auditi sunt, they were

heard.

S. auditus ero, I shall  
auditus eris, thou wilt  
auditus erit, he will  
Pl. auditi erimus, we shall  
auditi eritis, ye will  
auditi erunt, they will

have been heard.

S. auditus eram, I had  
auditus eras, thou hadst  
auditus erat, he had  
Pl. auditi eramus, we had  
auditi eratis, ye had  
auditi erant, they had

been heard.

Perfect.

Future Perfect.

Pluperfect.

	INDICATIVE MOOD.						
		Singular.			Plural.		
		1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Present.	Ām- Mōn- Rēg- Aud-	ō ēō ō iō	ās ēs ēs is	āt ēt īt īt	āmūs ēmūs īmūs	ātīs ētīs ītīs	ant ent unt iunt
Fut. Simple.	Āmā- Mōnē- Rēg- Audī-	} bō am	bīs ēs	bīt ēt	bīmūs ēmūs	bītīs ētīs	bunt ent
Imperfect.	Āmā- Mōnē- Rēg-ē- Audī-ē-		} bam	bās ās	bāt āt	bāmūs āmūs	bātīs ātīs
Perfect.	Āmāv- Mōnū- Rex- Audīv-	} ī		istī stī	īt t	īmūs mūs	istīs stīs
Fut. Perf.	Āmāv- Mōnū- Rex- Audīv-		} ērō	ērīs rīs	ērīt rīt	ērīmūs rīmūs	ērītīs rītīs
Pluperfect.	Āmāv- Mōnū- Rex- Audīv-	} eram		ērās rās	ērāt rāt	ērāmūs rāmūs	ērātīs rātīs

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	Present.			Future.			
	S. 2.	Pl. 2.		S. 2.	S. 3.	Pl. 2.	Pl. 3.
Ām-	Ā	ātē	~	ātō	ātō	ātōtē	antō
Mōn-	ē	ētē	~	ētō	ētō	ētōtē	entō
Rēg-	ē	ītē	~	ītō	ītō	ītōtē	untō
Aud-	ī	itē	~	itō	itō	itōtē	iuntō

*Note.*—When the Perfect-stem ends in *av, ev, ov, v* is often eliminated before *is* or *er* (but not before *ērē*), and contraction always follows: as—

āmāvisti × āmastī implēvissem × implesem nōvisti × nostī  
āmāvērunt × āmārunt implēvērām × implērām nōvērām × nōrām

When the Perfect-stem ends in *iv, v* is often eliminated, and contraction may follow before *is* only: as, *audīvi × audī*; *audīvistī × audīstī* × *audīstī*.

Writers sometimes cast out *is* from other Perfect forms: as, *dixistī*, *accessistīs* for *accessistīs*, *surrexē* for *surrexissē*; *ērepsēmūs* for *ērepsissēmūs*.

The sign × means 'changed to.'

FOUR CONJUGATIONS.  
VOICE.

## CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Ām-	em	ēs	ēt	ēmūs	ētīs	ent
Mōn-	ēam	ēās	ēāt	ēāmūs	ēātīs	ēant
Rēg-	am	ās	āt	āmūs	ātīs	ant
Aud-	iam	iās	iāt	iāmūs	iātīs	iant

Āmā- Mōnē- Rēgē- Audī-	}	rem	rēs	rēt	rēmūs	rētīs	rent
---------------------------------	---	-----	-----	-----	-------	-------	------

Āmāv- Mōnū- Rex- Audīv-	}	ērim	ērīs	ērīt	ērīmūs	ērītīs	ērint
----------------------------------	---	------	------	------	--------	--------	-------

Āmāv- Mōnū- Rex- Audīv-	}	issem	issēs	issēt	issēmūs	issētīs	issent
----------------------------------	---	-------	-------	-------	---------	---------	--------

## VERB INFINITIVE.

INFINITIVE.		GERUND.		
Pres. Imperf.	Perf. Pluperf.	N. Ac.	G. D. Abl.	
Āmā- Mōnē- Rēgē- Audī-	}	issē	}	um, ī, ō
Āmāv-				
Mōnū-				
Rex- Audīv-				

## PARTICIPLE Pres. Impf.

## SUPINES.

## PARTICIPLE Future.

Ām-	ans
Mōn-	}
Rēg-	
Audī-	

Āmāt-	}	1.	2.
Mōnīt-		um,	ū
Rect-			
Audit-			

ūrūs.



		INDICATIVE MOOD.						
		Singular.			Plural.			
		1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.	
Present.	Ăm-	ör	ăris*	ătür	ămür	ămīnī	antür	
	Mön-	ëör	ëris	ëtür	ëmür	ëmīnī	entür	
	Rëg-	ör	ëris	žitür	žmür	žmīnī	untür	
Aud-	Aud-	ïör	iris	itür	imür	imīnī	izntür	
	Ămā-	} bör	bëris	bītür	bīmür	bīmīnī	buntür	
	Mönē-		v. bërë					
Rëg-	} är	ëris	ëtür	ëmür	ëmīnī	entür		
Audī-		v. ërë						
Imperfect.	Ămā-	} bär	bāris	bātür	bāmür	bāmīnī	bantür	
	Mönē-		v. bārë					
	Rëgē-							
Audī-ë-	Audī-ë-							
	Ămāt-	} ũs	ũs	ũs	ī	ī	ī	
	Mönīt-		sum†	ës	est	sũmũs	estīs	sunt
Rect-								
Audīt-	Ămāt-	} ũs	ũs	ũs	ī	ī	ī	
	Mönīt-		ërō	ëris	ërit	ërimũs	ëritīs	ërunť
	Rect-							
Audīt-	Audīt-							
	Ămāt-	} ũs	ũs	ũs	ī	ī	ī	
	Mönīt-		ëram	ërās	ërāt	ërāmũs	ërātīs	ërant
Rect-								
Audīt-	Audīt-							

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

		Present.		Future.		
		S. 2.	Pl. 2.	S. 2.	S. 3.	Pl. 3.
Ămā-	} rë	rë	mīnī	tör	tör	ntör
		ërë	žmīnī	žitör	žitör	untör
		rë	mīnī	tör	tör	untör

\* In the Second Pers. Pres. Indic. Passive it is not so usual to write rë for ris, on account of the confusion with Infin. Act. and Imperat. Pass.

† In the periphrases fũi is occasionally used for sum, fũëro for ërō, fũëram for ëram, fũërim for sim, fũissem for essem, and fũisssä for essë : as, âmătũs fũi, fũëro, fũëram, fũërim, fũissem, fũisssä, etc.



OUR CONJUGATIONS.  
VOICE.

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

		Singular.			Plural.		
		1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Ām- Mōnē- Rēg- Audī-	}	ēr	ērīs <i>v.</i> ērē	ētūr	ēmūr	ēmīnī	entūr
		ār	ārīs <i>v.</i> ārē	ātūr	āmūr	āmīnī	antūr

Amā- Mōnē- Rēg- Audī-	}	rēr	rērīs <i>v.</i> rērē	rētūr	rēmūr	rēmīnī	rentūr
--------------------------------	---	-----	-------------------------	-------	-------	--------	--------

Amāt- Mōnīt- Rect- Audit-	}	ūs	ūs	ūs	ī	ī	ī
		sim	sīs	sīt	sīmūs	sītīs	sint

Amāt- Mōnīt- Rect- Audit-	}	ūs	ūs	ūs	ī	ī	ī
		essem	essēs	essēt	essēmūs	essētīs	essent

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Imperf.	Perf. Pluperf.	Future.
Āmā- Mōnē- Rēg- Audī-	Amāt- Mōnīt- Rect- Audit-	Amāt- Mōnīt- Rect- Audit-
} rī ī rī	} ūs essē	} um irī

PARTICIPLE Perfect.

Āmāt- Mōnīt- Rect- Audit-	} ūs
------------------------------------	------

GERUNDIVE.

Āmand- Mōnend- Rēgend- Audīend-	} ūs.
--	-------

§ 61. CONJUGATION OF THE DEPONENT VERB UTOR, I use (THIRD).  
VERB FINITE.

Present Tense.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Future Simple.	<p>S. ūtōr, I shall          ūtē-rīs v. -rē, thou wilt          ūtētūr, he will</p> <p>Pl. ūtēmūr, we shall          ūtēmīnī, ye will          ūtentūr, they will</p>	<p>ūtār, I may          ūtā-rīs vėl -rē, thou mayst          ūtātūr, he may          ūtāmūr, we may          ūtāmīnī, ye may          ūtantūr, they may</p>	<p>ūtēřē, use thou          ūtīmīnī, use ye</p> <p>ūtītōr, thou          ūtītōr, he          ūtuntōr, they</p> <p style="text-align: right;">} must use.</p>
Imperfect.	<p>S. ūtēbār, I was          ūtēbā-rīs v. -rē, thou wast</p> <p>Pl. ūtēbātūr, he was          ūtēbāmūr, we were          ūtēbāmīnī, ye were          ūtēbantūr, they were</p>	<p>ūtēřē, I might          ūtēřē-rīs v. -rē, thou mightst          ūtēřētūr, he might          ūtēřēmūr, we might          ūtēřēmīnī, ye might          ūtēřentūr, they might</p>	<p>use.</p>

<p>Perfect.</p>	<p>S. ūsūs sum, I used          ūsūs es, thou usedst          ūsūs est, he used          Pl. ūsī sūmūs, we used          ūsī estīs, ye used          ūsī sunt, they used.</p>	<p>ūsūs sim, I may          ūsūs sis, thou mayst          ūsūs sit, he may          ūsī sīmūs, we may          ūsī sītīs, ye may          ūsī sint, they may</p> <p style="text-align: right;">} have used.</p>	<p>VERB INFINITE.</p> <p>Inf. Pres. Imp. ūtī, to use.          Inf. Perf. Plup. ūsūs essē, to have used.</p>
<p>Future Perfect.</p>	<p>S. ūsūs erō, I shall          ūsūs erīs, thou wilt          ūsūs erīt, he will          Pl. ūsī erīmūs, we shall          ūsī erītis, ye will          ūsī erunt, they will</p> <p style="text-align: right;">} have used.</p>	<p>Inf. Fut. . . ūsūrūs essē, to be about to use.          Ger. Nom. Ac. ūtendum, using.          Ger. Gen. . . ūtendī, of using.          Ger. Dat. Abl. ūtendō, for or by using.</p>	<p>Sup. in um . . ūsum, to use.          Sup. in u . . ūsū, in using, or to be used.</p>
<p>Pluperfect.</p>	<p>S. ūsūs eram, I had          ūsūs erās, thou hadst          ūsūs erāt, he had          Pl. ūsī erāmūs, we had          ūsī erātīs, ye had          ūsī erant, they had</p> <p style="text-align: right;">} used.</p>	<p>Part. Pres. . . ūtens, using.          Part. Fut. . . ūsūrūs, about to use.          Part. Perf. . . ūsūs, having used.          Gerundive . . ūtendūs, to be used.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">} have used.</p>	<p>Part. Pres. . . ūtens, using.          Part. Fut. . . ūsūrūs, about to use.          Part. Perf. . . ūsūs, having used.          Gerundive . . ūtendūs, to be used.</p>

Present.	INDICATIVE MOOD.						
	Singular.			Plural.			
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.	
Vēn-	ōr	ā-rīs (rē)	ātūr	āmūr	āmīnī	antūr	
Vēr-	ēōr	ē-rīs (rē)	ētūr	ēmūr	ēmīnī	entūr	
Ūt-	ōr	ē-rīs (rē)	ītūr	īmūr	īmīnī	untūr	
Part-	īōr	ī-rīs (rē)	ītūr	īmūr	īmīnī	īuntūr	
Fut. Simple.	Vēnā-	} bōr	bē-rīs (rē)	bītūr	bīmūr	bīmīnī	buntūr
	Vērē-						
Imperfect.	Ūt-	} ār	ē-rīs (rē)	ētūr	ēmūr	ēmīnī	entūr
	Partī-						
Imperfect.	Vēnā-	} bār	barīs <i>v.</i>	bātūr	bāmūr	bāmīnī	bantūr
	Vērē-						
Imperfect.	Ūt-ē-	} bār	barīs <i>v.</i>	bātūr	bāmūr	bāmīnī	bantūr
	Partī-ē-			bārē			
Perfect.	Vēnāt-	} ūs	ūs	ūs	ī	ī	ī
	Vērīt-						
Perfect.	Ūs-	} sum	ēs	est	sūmūs	estīs	sunt
	Partīt-						
Fut. Perf.	Vēnāt-	} ūs	ūs	ūs	ī	ī	ī
	Vērīt-						
Fut. Perf.	Ūs-	} ērō	ērīs	ērīt	ērīmūs	ērītīs	ērunt
	Partīt-						
Pluperfect.	Vēnāt-	} ūs	ūs	ūs	ī	ī	ī
	Vērīt-						
Pluperfect.	Ūs-	} eram	ērās	ērāt	ērāmūs	ērātīs	ērant
	Partīt-						

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	Present.			Future.	
	S. 2.	Pl. 2.		S. 2.	Pl. 3.
Vēnā-	} rē	mīnī	}	tōr	ntōr
Vērē-					
Ūt-	ērē	ž-mīnī	žtōr	žtōr	untōr
Partī-	rē	mīnī	tōr	tōr	untōr

*Note.* Some Deponents have an Active form also; as, pūnīōr and pūnīō, *punish*. Many Participles Perfect of Deponent Verbs are used Passively as well as Actively; such are, auspīcātūs, ābōmīnātūs, ādeptūs, cōmītātūs, commentūs, confessūs, dē-testātūs, dignātūs, exsēcātūs, expertūs, ēmensūs, fūrātūs, fābrīcātūs, frustrātūs, īmītātūs, mēdītātūs, mentītūs, mēdīcātūs, mērītūs, mōdērātūs, oblītūs, ōpīnātūs, pactūs, partītūs, pollīcītūs, pōpūlātūs, praedātūs, prēcātūs, prōfessūs, sōlītūs, testātūs, testīfīcātūs, vēnērātūs, etc.

FOUR CONJUGATIONS.  
VERBS.

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Vēn-	ēr	ē-ris (rē)	ētūr	ēmūr	ēmīnī	entūr
Vēr-	ēār	ēā-ris (rē)	ēātūr	ēāmūr	ēāmīnī	ēantūr
Ūt-	ār	ā-ris (rē)	ātūr	āmūr	āmīnī	antūr
Part-	iār	iā-ris (rē)	iātūr	iāmūr	iāmīnī	iantūr

Vēnā- Vērē- Ūt-č- Partī-	}	rēr	rērīs v.	rētūr	rēmūr	rēmīnī	rentūr
		rērē					

Vēnāt- Vērīt- Ūs- Partīt-	}	ūs	ūs	ūs	ī	ī	ī
		sim	sīs	sīt	sīmūs	sītīs	sint

Vēnāt- Vērīt- Ūs- Partīt-	}	ūs	ūs	ūs	ī	ī	ī
		essem	essēs	essēt	essēmūs	essētīs	essent

VERB INFINITIVE.

INFIN. Pres. Imperf.	INFIN. Perf. Plup.	PART. Fut.	INFIN. Fut.
VēnĀ- VērĒ- ŪT- Partī-	Vēnāt- Vērīt- Ūs- Partīt-	ūrūs	ūrūs essē
rī	ūs essē		
ī			
rī			

PART. Pres.	GERUND.	GERUNDIVE.	PART. Perf.	SUPINES.
Vēnans Vērens Ūtens Partiēns	Vēnand- Vērend- Ūtend- Partiēnd-	ūs	Vēnāt- Vērīt- Ūs- Partīt-	um, ū.
	um, ī, ō		ūs	



§ 63. *A.* Verbs in *ī-ō* of the Third Conjugation, in their Present-stem forms, retain this inorganic *ī* generally; but not before *ī*, final *e*, and short *ēr*. These Verbs are:—

Căpřō, cŭpřō, and făcřō,  
 Fōdřō, fŭgřō, and jăcřō,  
 Păřřō, răpřō, săpřō, quătřō,  
 Compounds of spēcřō and lăcřō.  
 Deponent: grădřōr, pătřōr, mōřřōr;  
 And, in some tenses, pőtřōr, ōřřōr.

## EXAMPLES.

## ACTIVE.

Indic. Pres. căpř-ō, căp-īs, -īt, -īmŭs, -ītīs, căpř-unt.  
 Fut. căpř-am, -ēs, -ēt, -ēmŭs, -ētīs, -ent.  
 Imperf. căpř-ēbam, -ēbās, -ēbăt, -ēbāmŭs, -ēbătīs, -ēbant.  
 Conj. Pres. căpř-am, -ās, -ăt, -āmŭs, -ătīs, -ant.  
 Imperf. căp-ērem, -ērēs, -ērēt, -ērēmŭs, -ērētīs, -ērent.  
 Imper. Pres. căp-ě, -itě.  
 Fut. căp-ītō, -itōtě, căpř-untō.  
 Infin. Pres. căp-ěřě. Gerund, căpř-endum, -endī, -endō.

## DEPONENT.

Indic. Pres. pătř-ōr, păt-ērīs, -itŭr, -imŭr, -imīnī, pătř-untŭr.  
 Fut. pătř-ăr, -ērīs, -ētŭr, -ēmŭr, -ēmīnī, -entŭr.  
 Imperf. pătř-ēbăr, -ēbărīs, -ēbătŭr, -ēbāmŭr, -ēbămīnī, -ēbantŭr.  
 Conj. Pres. pătř-ăr, -ărīs, -ătŭr, -āmŭr, -ămīnī, -antŭr.  
 Imperf. păt-ērēr, -ērērīs, -ērētŭr, -ērēmŭr, -ērēmīnī, -ērentŭr.  
 Imper. Pres. păt-ěrě, -imīnī.  
 Fut. păt-itōr, pătř-untōr.  
 Infin. Pres. păt-ī. Gerund, pătř-endŭm, -endī, -endō. Gerundive, pătř-endŭs.

Note 1. Őřřōr is conjugated like pătřōr, except a few forms which follow the Fourth Conjugation: ōřřīrī, ōřřērēr, etc. Pőtřōr follows the Fourth Conjugation, but in some forms wavers between the Third and Fourth: as, pőtřitŭr or pőtřitŭr; pőtřimŭr or pőtřimŭr; pőtřērēr or pőtřērēr.

Note 2. Mōřřōr, ōřřōr, have Future Participles mōřřitŭrŭs, ōřřitŭrŭs.

*B.* Verbs in *ūō* retain *u* in all forms; as, indŭō, indŭīs, indŭī, indŭērě.

## PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

§ 64. The Participles in ŭrŭs, dŭs, may be conjugated with all the Tenses of the Verb sum. These forms are called Conjŭgătĭō Pērĭphrăs-tĭcă Fŭtŭrĭ and Conjŭgătĭō Pērĭphrăs-tĭcă Gērundĭvĭ: as,

PLURAL.

C. P. G.

Amāturī, ae, ā  
Mōnitūrī  
Rēgēndī  
Audītūrī  
Vēnātūrī  
Vērītūrī  
Ūsūrī  
Partiētūrī

C. P. F.

Amātūrī, ae, ā  
Mōnitūrī  
Rēctūrī  
Audītūrī  
Vēnātūrī  
Vērītūrī  
Ūsūrī  
Partiētūrī

SINGULAR.

C. P. G.

Āmandūs, ā, um  
Mōnitūrūs  
Rēgēndūs  
Audītūrūs  
Vēnātūrūs  
Vērītūrūs  
Ūsūrūs  
Partiētūrūs

C. P. F.

Āmātūrūs, ā, um  
Mōnitūrūs  
Rēctūrūs  
Audītūrūs  
Vēnātūrūs  
Vērītūrūs  
Ūsūrūs  
Partiētūrūs

Pres.	sum	sim	sūmūs	estīs	sunt	sīmūs	sītīs	sint
S. Fut.	ērō	ērīs	ērīmūs	ērītīs	ērunt	ērēmūs	ērītīs	ērunt
Imp.	eram	erās	erāmūs	erātīs	erant	erēmūs	essētīs	essent
Perf.	fū-i	-istī	fū-īmūs	-istīs	-ērunt	fū-ērīmūs	-ērītīs	-ērunt
Fut. P.	fū-erō	-erīs	fū-erīmūs	-erītīs	-erint	fū-issēmūs	-issētīs	-issent
Plupf.	fū-eram	-erās	fū-erāmūs	-erātīs	-erant			

Conj. M.

Indic. M.

Conj. M.

Inf. Pres. esse  
" Perf. fuissē.

In translating, it is only required to construe each part of the Verb sum, as given in the Table, § 50, with each Participle: as, amātūrūs sum, *I am about to love*; amandūs sum, *I am meet to be loved* (or, *I am to be loved*). So also fūtūrūs sum, *I am about to be*; fūtūrūs sim, eram, essem, &c.

## SIGNS OF THE TENSES AND MOODS.

§ 65. The Latin Tenses may be variously rendered: as,

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres. *āmō, love, am loving.*

Imp. *āmābam, loved, was loving, used to love.*

Perf. *āmāvī, loved (Simple Past), have loved (Present Past).*

§ 66. The Conjunctive Mood has two general uses:

- (1) Pure, or not subordinate to another Verb:
- (2) Subjunctive, or subordinate to another Verb.

1. The Pure Conjunctive is rendered in English with auxiliary Verbs for Signs; generally *would* or *should*; sometimes *can, could; may, might; shall, or will*: as,

*āmem tē (sī bōnūs sīs),  
I can love you (if you are good).*

*āmārem tē (sī bōnūs essēs),  
I should—would—love you (if you were good), or  
I should have been loving you (if you were good).*

*āmāvissem tē (sī bōnūs fūissēs or essēs),  
I should—would—have loved you (had you been good).*

2. When the Mood is Subjunctive, it sometimes has a sign in English: as, *Ĕdē ūt vīvās, eat that you may live*; but oftener it must be rendered as if it were Indicative: as *sīs, essēs, fūissēs*, in the last Examples. So:

*Laudātūr quōd pārūrīt, he is praised in that he obeyed.*

*Laudāvī ěm quī pārūissēt, I praised him (as one) who had obeyed.*

§ 67. The Present Conjunctive is also used Imperatively:

Active.	}	}	Passive.
<i>Āmem, may I, or let me</i>	}	}	<i>Āmēr, may I, or let me</i>
<i>Āmēs, mayst thou, or see</i>			<i>Āmēris, mayst thou, or see</i>
<i>thou</i>			<i>thou</i>
<i>Āmēt, may he, or let him</i>			<i>Āmētūr, may he, or let him</i>
<i>Āmēmūs, may we, or let us</i>			<i>Āmēmūr, may we, or let us</i>
<i>Āmētīs, may ye, or see ye</i>	}	}	<i>Āmēminī, may ye, or see ye</i>
<i>Ament, may they, or let them</i>			<i>Amentūr, may they, or let them</i>

*he loved.*

## THE INFINITIVES.

§ 68. The Infinitives in *rě, rī*, are Present or Imperfect; Infinitives in *issě, tūs-essě*, Perfect or Pluperfect: as,

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (1) Dīcītūr āmārě,<br><i>He is said to be loving.</i>                                      | (1) Dīcītūr āmārī,<br><i>He is said to be loved.</i>                                     |
| Dīcēbatūr āmārě,<br><i>He was said to have been loving.</i>                                | Dīcēbātūr āmārī,<br><i>He was said to have been (at the time) loved.</i>                 |
| Sciō ěum āmārě,<br><i>I know (that) he is loving.</i>                                      | Sciō ěum āmārī,<br><i>I know (that) he is loved.</i>                                     |
| Sciēbam ěum āmārě,<br><i>I knew (that) he was loving.</i>                                  | Sciēbam ěum āmārī,<br><i>I knew (that) he was loved.</i>                                 |
| (2) Dīcītūr āmāvissě,<br><i>He is said to have loved.</i>                                  | (2) Dīcītūr āmātūs essě,<br><i>He is said to have been loved.</i>                        |
| Dīcēbātūr āmāvissě,<br><i>He was said to have loved.</i>                                   | Dīcēbātūr āmātūs essě,<br><i>He was said to have been (at a former time) loved.</i>      |
| Sciō ěum āmāvissě,<br><i>I know (that) he loved.</i><br><i>I know (that) he has loved.</i> | Sciō ěum āmātum essě,<br><i>I know he was loved.</i><br><i>I know he has been loved.</i> |
| Sciēbam ěum āmāvissě,<br><i>I knew (that) he had loved.</i>                                | Sciēbam ěum āmātum essě,<br><i>I knew he had been loved.</i>                             |

§ 69. *A.* The Future Infinitive Active has two forms, *-ūrūs essě, -ūrūs fūissě*, the uses of which a few instances will show:—

- (a) Crēdērīs ĩtūrūs essě, *you are believed to be about to go.*  
Crēdō tē ĩtūrum essě, *I believe (that) you will go.*
- (b) Crēdēbārīs ĩtūrūs essě, *you were believed to be about to go.*  
Crēdēbam tē ĩtūrum essě, *I believed that you would go.*
- (c) Crēdērīs ĩtūrūs fūissě, *you are believed to have been about to go.*  
Crēdō tē ĩtūrum fūissě, *I believe that you would have gone.*

B. The Future Infinitive Passive is formed by the union of the Supine in um with the Impersonal Infinitive irī : as,

Crēdō āmātūm irī Jūliam, (lit.) *I believe there-is-a-going to love Julia*  
i.e., *I believe Julia will be loved.*

Aiunt ultum irī injūriās, *they say that the wrongs will be avenged.*

a. The same may be expressed by fūtūrum esse ūt, fōrē ūt, with āmētūr, āmārētūr; as,

Crēdō fūtūrum-essē (or fōrē) ūt Jūliā āmētūr, *I believe (that) Julia*  
*will be loved.*

Crēdēbam fōrē ūt Jūliā āmārētūr, *I believed (that) Julia would be*  
*loved.*

#### GERUND.—SUPINES.—PARTICIPLES.

§ 70. A. The Gerund is perhaps the Neuter Gerundive Participle declined as a Verb-Noun (um, ī, ō).

B. The Supines are Cases (Accusative and Ablative) of a Verb-Noun of the Fourth Declension.

C. The Gerundive (ūs, ā, um, like bōnūs) is used to express meetness or necessity, either impersonally, as, ēundum est, *one must go*; or personally, as, vītā tūendā est, *life should be protected*. If a Case of the Person is added, that Case is usually the Dative: as, ēundum est mihi, *I must go*; vītā nōbīs tūendā est, *life should be protected by us*.

D. The other Participles are—

Active. Pres. āmans, *loving*, like ingens.

Fut. āmātūrūs, *about to love*,

Passive. Perf. āmātūs, *loved*,

} like bōnūs.

The three Participles wanting may be thus supplied:

Act. Part. Perf. '*having loved*,' quum āmāvissēt (or by § 125.)

Pass. Part. Pres. '*being loved*,' quī āmātūr, or dum āmātūr.

„ Part. Fut. '*about to be loved*,' quī āmābitūr.

E. Some Verbs form Participials in bundūs or cundūs, expressing 'fulness,' as, vāgābundūs, *wandering*, irācundūs, *wrathful*; in bilīs, expressing 'possibility,' as, pārābilīs, *procurable*; in ilīs, expressing 'capacity,' as, dōcīlīs, *teachable*; in ax, expressing 'inclination,' as, lōquax, *talkative*; in idūs, expressing 'active force,' as, rāpidūs, *hurrying*, cūpidūs, *desirous*.



## DERIVED VERBS.

§ 71. I. Frequentative Verbs express repeated action, are of the First Conjugation, and formed either in *-tō*, *-sō*, from Supine-stems: as, *cantō*, *I sing often* (*cānō*, *cantum*), *cursō*, *I run often* (*currō*, *cursum*); or by adding *-i-tō*, *-i-tōr* to the Clipt Stem, as, *rōgītō*, *I ask often* (*rōgō*).

II. Inceptive Verbs express beginning of action, are of the Third Conjugation, and formed by adding *-scō* to the Present-stem: as,

Lābascō,	<i>I begin to totter,</i>	from lābārē.
Pallescō,	<i>I turn pale,</i>	„ pallērē.

Or from Nouns, with suffix *-a-scō* or *-e-scō*; as,

Pūerascō,	<i>I become a boy,</i>	from pūēr.
Mītescō,	<i>I become mild,</i>	„ mītīs.

III. Desiderative Verbs express the desire of action, are of the Fourth Conjugation, and formed by adding *-ūrō* to the Supine-stem as,

Ēsūrō,	<i>I am hungry,</i>	from ēdō, ēs-um.
Partūrō,	<i>I am in labour,</i>	„ pārō, part-um.

## QUASI-PASSIVE AND SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS.

§ 72. The Verbs which unite an Active form with a Passive meaning are:

Exūlō, <i>I am banished</i> (ārē).	Vāpūlō, <i>I am beaten</i> (ārē).
Fīō, <i>I am made.</i>	Vēnēō, <i>I am on sale</i> (irē).
Līcēō, <i>I am put to auction.</i>	

§ 73. The Verbs which have an Active Present with a Perfect of Passive form, are:

Audēō, <i>I dare,</i>	Perf. ausūs sum, <i>I dared.</i>
Fidō, <i>I trust,</i>	„ fīsūs sum, <i>I trusted.</i>
Gaudēō, <i>I am glad,</i>	„ gāvīsūs sum, <i>I was glad.</i>
Sōlēō, <i>I am wont,</i>	„ sōlītūs sum, <i>I was wont.</i>

Some have Active Perfect with Deponent Perfect Participles: as,

Present.	Perfect.	Part. Perf.
Jūrō, <i>I swear</i>	jūrāvī, <i>I swore</i>	jūrātūs, <i>having sworn.</i>
Cēnō, <i>I sup</i>	cēnāvī, <i>I supped</i>	cēnātūs, <i>having supped.</i>
Prandēō, <i>I dine</i>	prandī, <i>I dined</i>	pransūs, <i>having dined.</i>

So nuptā, *wedded*, pōtūs, *having drunk*, and some others.

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective Verbs want some of the usual parts of a Verb.

§ 74. I. The Verbs *coepī*, *I have begun*, *ōdī*, *I hate*, *měmīnī*, *I remember*, have no Present-stem Tenses.

## SCHEME.

	Indic.	Conj.	Infm.	
Coep-	} ī ēřō eram	řim	issě	Perf.
Ōd-		. . .	. . .	Fut. Perf.
Měmīn-		issem	issě	Plup.

*Měmīnī* has Imperative Fut. Sing. *měmentō*; Plur. *měmentōtě*.

*Coepī* has Part. Perf. *coeptūs*; Fut. *coeptūrūs*.

*Ōdī* „ „ *ōsūs* „ „ *ōsūrūs*.

*a. Nōvī*, *I know* (from *noscō*), is similarly used.

II. Many Verbs have Perfect without Supine (see Table), and many Inceptive and other Verbs have neither Perfect nor Supine: *as*, *mitescō*, *pollēō*, *fūrō*, *fěřiō*.

III. Verbs Defective in other forms:

(1) *Aiō*, *I say 'ay,' affirm.*

Indic. Pres. *aiō*, *āis*, *āit* — — — *aiunt*.

„ Imperf. *aiēbam*, *-bās*, &c., complete.

Conj. Pres. — — *aiās*, *aiāt* — — — *aiant*.

(2) *Inquam*, *I say*.

Indic. Pres. *inquam*, *inquīs*, *inquīt*, *inquīmūs* — — *inquūt*.

„ Imperf. — — — *inquēbāt* — — — *inquēbant*.

„ S. Fut. — — *inquēs*, *inquēt*.

„ Perf. — — *inquistī*, *inquīt*.

Imper. Pres. *inquē* — — — *inquētě*.

(3) *Quaesō*, *I entreat*; 1st Pers. Pl. *quaesūmūs*.

(4) *Fārī*, *to speak*; used by the Poets in this and a few other forms: *as*, *fātūr*, *he speaks*; *fābōr*, *I shall speak*; *fārě*, *speak thou*. Participles: *fātūs*; *fandūs*. Gerund: *fandī*, *fandō*.

(5) The Imperatives:

*a. Āpāgě*, *begone*.

*Cědō*, *cědītě* (or *cettě*), *give h. re.*

*Hāvě* (or *āvě*), *hāvětě*, *hail*. Infm. *hāvērě*.

*Salyě*, *salyětě*, *hail*. Infm. *salvērě*. Fut. *salvēbīs*.

*b. Āgě*, *āgītě*, *come*; *Vālě*, *vālětě*, *farewell*; Infm. *vālērě*; are used with special meaning, but their Verbs *āgō*, *vālěō*, are fully conjugated.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 75. Impersonal Verbs are conjugated (as such) only in the Third Persons Singular of the Finite Verb, and in the Infinitive.

A. Active Impersonals have no Passive Voice.

(1) The principal of these are of the Second Conjugation :

Ůportět, děcět, dēdēcět,	<i>it behoves, besecms, misbesecms,</i>
Pīgět, pūdět, paenītět,	<i>it irks, shames, repents,</i>
Taedět add and mīsērět,	<i>it disgusts, moves pity,</i>
Lībět, licět, and liquět,	<i>it pleases, is lawful, is clear,</i>
Attīnět and pertīnět.	<i>it relates, belongs.</i>

Conjugation of Impersonal Verbs (Second).

		Indic.	Conjunc.	Infm.						
mē, tē, ěum, nōs, vōs, ěōs	{ 1. Ůport- 2. Dēc- 3. Dēdēc- 4. Pīg- 5. Pūd- 6. Paenīt- 7. Taed- 8. Mīsēr-	{ ět ěbit. ěbāt ůit ůěrīt. ůěrāt	{ ěāt  ěrět. ůěrīt  ůissět.	{ ěrē.  ůissě.	Pres.					
					S. Fut.					
					Imperf.					
					Perf.					
					Fut. Perf.					
					Pluperf.					
					mīhĭ, etc.	{ 9. Līb- 10. Lic-	{ ůěrīt. ůěrāt	{ ůissět.		
ād mē, etc.	{ 11. Attīn- 12. Pertīn-									

The Persons are expressed by the Case: as,

Sing.	Ůportět mē ěrē,	<i>it behoves me</i>	} <i>to go,</i>	} <i>or I</i>	} <i>ought to go.</i>
	Ůportět tē ěrē,	<i>„ „ you</i>			
	Ůportět ěum ěrē,	<i>„ „ him</i>			
Plur.	Ůportět nōs ěrē,	<i>„ „ us</i>	} <i>or I</i>	} <i>may go.</i>	
	Ůportět vōs ěrē,	<i>„ „ you</i>			
	Ůportět ěōs ěrē,	<i>„ „ them</i>			

Sing.	Licět mīhĭ ěrē,	<i>it is allowed me</i>	} <i>to go,</i>	} <i>or I</i>	} <i>may go.</i>
	licět tībĭ ěrē,	<i>„ „ you</i>			
	licět ěĭ ěrē,	<i>„ „ him</i>			
Plur.	licět nōbĭs ěrē,	<i>„ „ us</i>	} <i>or I</i>	} <i>may go.</i>	
	licět vōbĭs ěrē,	<i>„ „ you</i>			
	licět ĭĭs ěrē,	<i>„ „ them</i>			

So in the other Tenses and Moods.

(2) Among Impersonal Verbs of other Conjugations are :

Accidit, <i>it happens</i>	} mihī, tibi, ēi, etc.	Dēlectāt, <i>it charms</i>	} mē, tē, ēum, etc. mēā, tūā, ējūs, etc.
Contingit, <i>it befalls</i>		Jūvāt, <i>it delights</i>	
Ēvenit, <i>it turns out</i>		Intērest, <i>it concerns</i>	
Convēnit, <i>it suits</i>		Rēfert, <i>it imports</i>	
Expēdit, <i>it is expedient</i>		Constāt, <i>it is acknowledged.</i>	

(3) Some Impersonals express *changes of season and weather* : as,

Fulgūrāt, <i>it lightens.</i>	Tōnāt, <i>it thunders.</i>
Ningit, <i>it snows.</i>	Lūcescit, <i>it dawns.</i>
Plūit, <i>it rains.</i>	Vespērascit, <i>it gets late.</i>

§ 76. B. (1) Intransitive Verbs are used impersonally in the Passive Voice : as, lūdītūr, *there is playing*, from lūdō, *I play*.

	Indicative.	Conjunctive.	Infinitive.
Present	Lūdītūr	lūdātūr	lūdi.
Simple Fut.	lūdētūr		lūsum iri.
Imperf.	lūdēbātūr	lūdērētūr.	
Perfect	lūsum est	lūsum sīt	lūsum essē.
Fut. Perf.	lūsum ērit		
Pluperf.	lūsum ērāt	lūsum essēt	lūsum fūissē.

The Persons may be expressed by an Ablative of the Agent : as,

Present Indicative.

Sing.	Lūdītūr ā mē, <i>there is playing by me,</i>	or <i>I play,</i>
	lūdītūr ā tē,                   "           " <i>thee,    thou playest,</i>	
	lūdītūr āb ēō,                   "           " <i>him,    he plays,</i>	
Plur.	lūdītūr ā nōbīs,               "           " <i>us,     we play,</i>	
	lūdītūr ā vōbīs               "           " <i>you,   ye play,</i>	
	lūdītūr āb iīs,                 "           " <i>them,   they play.</i>	

But the Ablative is often omitted, being understood from the context.

§ 77. (2) The Neuter Gerundive is used impersonally with *essē* to express meetness or necessity : sometimes with Dative of Person.

Present Indicative.

Sing.	Lūdendum est mihī, <i>there must be playing by me,</i>	or <i>I</i>	} <i>must play.</i>
	lūdendum est tibi,                   "           "           " <i>thee,    thou</i>		
	lūdendum est ēi,                   "           "           " <i>him,    he</i>		
Plur.	lūdendum est nōbīs,               "           "           " <i>us,     we</i>		
	lūdendum est vōbīs               "           "           " <i>you,   ye</i>		
	lūdendum est iīs,                 "           "           " <i>them,   they</i>		

Here too the Case is often omitted : nunc est bibendum, *now we (or men) must drink.*

## ANOMALOUS VERBS.

§ 78. Anomalous Verbs do not form all their parts according to rule. Sometimes their Tenses are *borrowed* from several stems, as in *sum*, *possum*, *fērō*; sometimes their irregularities arise from mutation of *letters*, as in *vōlō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, *ēō*, *quēō*, *ēdō*.

## § 79. CONJUGATION-FORM OF ANOMALOUS VERBS.

	1. <i>Be able.</i>	2. <i>Wish.</i>	3. <i>Not-wish.</i>	4. <i>Wish-rather.</i>
1 Pers. Pres.	Possum	Vōlō	Nōlō	Mālō
2 Pers. „	pōtēs	vīs	nonvīs	māvīs
Infin. „	possē	vellē	nollē	mallē
Perfect	pōtū-ī	vōlū-ī	nōlū-ī	mālū-ī
Ger. in <i>dum</i>	—	(vōlend-um)	(nōlend-um)	(mālend-um)
„ <i>dī</i>	—	vōlend-ī	nōlend-ī	mālend-ī
„ <i>dō</i>	—	vōlend-ō	nōlend-ō	mālend-ō
Part. Pres.	—	vōlens	nōlens	mālens

Pōtens, *able*, *powerful*, is used as an Adjective.

	5. <i>Bear.</i>	6. <i>Be made.</i>	7. <i>Go.</i>	8. <i>Can.</i>
1 Pers. Pres.	Fērō	Fīō	Ēō	Quēō
2 Pers. „	fers	fīs	īs	quīs
Infin. „	ferrē	fīērī	irē	quīrē
Perfect	tūlī	factūs sum	ivī	quīvī
Ger. in <i>dum</i>	fērend-um	—	ēund-um	
„ <i>dī</i>	fērend-ī	—	ēund-ī	
„ <i>dō</i>	fērend-ō	—	ēund-ō	
Supine in <i>um</i>	lāt-um	—	īt-um	
„ <i>ū</i>	lāt-ū	—	īt-ū	
Part. Pres.	fēr-ens	—	iens (ēunt-īs)	
„ Fut.	lāt-ūrūs	—	īt-ūrūs	

5. Fērōr (Passive) has Pres. Ind. 2. ferrīs (for fēr-ērīs); 3. fertūr; Imperf. Conj. fēr-r-ēr (for fēr-ērēr), ferrērīs, etc., and Inf. ferrī. Other Present-stem forms are regular. Supine-stem forms, lātūs sum, etc.

6. Fīō in the Present-stem forms is the Passive of fācīō, which is regular in the Active, and in the Supine-stem forms, of the Passive.

8. Qūeo and its compound nēquēō (*cannot*) form their tenses like ēō.

9. Ēdō, *I eat*, often changes some of its forms as follows

Pres. 2nd Pers.	3rd Pers.	Infin.	Imperf. Conj.
ēdīs or ēs	ēdīt or est	ēdērē or essē	ēdērēm or essēm.

Pres. Conj. ēdim, ēdīs, ēdīt, is used. Other forms are regular.



		INDICATIVE MOOD.					
		Singular.			Plural.		
		1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Present Tense.	Possum	pōtēs	pōtest	possūmūs	pōtestīs	pōssūnt	
	Vōlō	vīs	vult	vōlūmūs	vultīs	vōlunt	
	Nōlō	nonvīs	nonvult	nōlūmūs	nonvultīs	nōlunt	
	Mālō	māvīs	māvult	mālūmūs	māvultīs	mālunt	
	Fērō	fers	fert	fērīmūs	fertīs	fērunt	
	Fīō	fīs	fīt	—	—	fīunt	
	Eō	īs	īt	īmūs	ītīs	ēunt	
Imperfect.	Pōt-	eram	erās	erāt	erāmūs	erātīs	erant
	Vōlē-	} bam	bās	bāt	bāmūs	bātīs	bant
	Nōlē-						
	Mālē-						
	Fērē-						
	Fīē-						
Ī-							
Perfect.	Pōtū-	} ī	istī	īt	īmūs	istīs	} erunt <i>or</i> erē
	Vōlū-						
	Nōlū-						
	Mālū-						
	Tūl-						
Īv-							
Pluperfect.	Pōtū-	eram	erās	erāt	erāmūs	erātīs	erant
	Vōlū-						
	Nōlū-						
	Mālū-						
	Tūl-						
Īv-							
Future Simple.	Pōt-	erō	erīs	erīt	erīmūs	erītīs	erunt
	Vōl-	} am	ēs	ēt	ēmūs	ētīs	ent
	Nōl-						
	Māl-						
	Fēr-	} bō	bīs	bīt	bīmūs	bītīs	bunt
	Fī-						
Ī-							
Future Perfect.	Pōtū-	} erō	erīs	erīt	erīmūs	erītīs	erint
	Vōlū-						
	Nōlū-						
	Mālū-						
	Tūl-						
Īv-							

## ANOMALOUS VERBS.

## CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

		Singular.			Plural.		
		1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Poss- Vě- Nōl- Māl- Fěr- Fī- Ě-	}	im	īs	īt	īmūs	ītīs	int
Fēr- Fī- Ě-		am	ās	āt	āmūs	ātīs	ant
Poss- Vell- Noll- Mall- Ferr- Fjēr- Īr-	}	em	ēs	ět	ēmūs	ētīs	ent
Pōtū- Vōlū- Nōlū- Mālū- Tūl- Īv-		}	ěrim	ěriš	ěrit	ěrimūs	ěritīs
Pōtū- Vōlū- Nōlū- Mālū- Tūl- Īv-	}		issem	issēs	issět	issēmūs	issētīs

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Singular.	Plural.
(3) Nōlī	nōlītě
(5) Fěr	fertě
(6) Fī	fītě
(7) Ī	itě

## Future.

2.	3.	2.	3.
(3) Nōlītō	nōlītō	nōlītōtě	nōluntō
(6) Fertō	fertō	fertōtě	fěrunto
(7) Ītō	itō	itōtě	ěuntō

(For the Parts  
of VERB INFI-  
NITE, see Form  
of Conjugation,  
§ 79.)

§ 81. TABLE OF VERBS, SHOWING PRESENT, INFINITIVE, PERFECT, AND SUPINE. (See § 48; Note 2.)

I. FIRST CONJUGATION (Character **A**: ĀmĀ- rě).

Usual Form :	Present. ( $\check{a}$ -o) -ō	Infin. -ārě	Perfect. ā-vī	Supine. ā-tum
	Ām-ō	-ārě	āmā-vī	āmā-tum.

Exceptions.

	Present.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
(1)	1. Crěpō	-ārě	crěpūi	crěpītum	<i>creak.</i>
	2. Cūbō	-ārě	cūbūi	cūbītum	<i>lie down.</i>
	3. Dōmō	-ārě	dōmūi	dōmītum	<i>tame.</i>
	4. Micō	-ārě	mīcūi	—	<i>glitter.</i>
	5. Plicō	-ārě	-plicūi	-plicītum	<i>fold.</i>
	6. Sōnō	-ārě	sōnūi	sōnītum	<i>sound.</i>
	7. Tōnō	-ārě	tōnūi	tōnītum	<i>thunder.</i>
	8. Větō	-ārě	větūi	větītum	<i>forbid.</i>

-ūi, -ītum.

(2)	Sēcō	-ārě	sēcūi	sectum	<i>cut.</i>
-----	------	------	-------	--------	-------------

Redupl., -tum.

(3)	1. Dō	-ārě	dēdi	dātum	<i>give.</i>
	2. Stō	-ārě	stēti	stātum	<i>stand.</i>

-vī, -tum.

(4)	1. Jūvō	-ārě	jūvī	jūtum	<i>help.</i>
	2. Lāvō	-ārě	lāvī	lōtum	<i>wash.</i>

(1) 5. Also plicāvī, plicātum.

(3) 1. Dō, dārě, has short  $\check{a}$  throughout; with the compounds circumdō, surround; pessumdō, ruin; vēnumdō, put on sale, which form -dēdi, -dātum. The other compounds pass to the Third Conj. and form -dīdi, -dītum. III. 18.  
2. Comp. ad- con- ob- per- prae-stō, etc., form stīti, stātum (-stītum, rare).

II. SECOND CONJUGATION (Character **B**: MonĒ- rě).

Usual Form :	-ēō		-ūi	-ītum
	Mōn-ēō	-ērě	mōn-ūi	mōn-ītum.

Exceptions.

-vī, -tum.

(1)	1. Dělēō	-ērě	dělēvī	dělētum	<i>blot out.</i>
	2. Flēō	-ērě	flēvī	flētum	<i>weep.</i>
	3. -plēō	-ērě	-plēvī	-plētum	<i>fill.</i>

-ūi, -tum.

(2)	1. Dōcēō	-ērě	dōcūi	doctum	<i>teach.</i>
	2. Miscēō	-ērě	miscūi	mistum	<i>mix.</i>
	3. Tēnēō	-ērě	tēnūi	-tentum	<i>hold.</i>

(1) 3. Forms thus described are only used in the compounds.

## -sī, -tum.

	Present.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
(3) 1.	Augĕō	-ĕrĕ	auxī	auctum	<i>increase.</i>
2.	Torquĕō	-ĕrĕ	torsī	tortum	<i>twist.</i>
3.	Lūgĕō	-ĕrĕ	luxī	—	<i>mourn.</i>

## -sī, -sum.

(4) 1.	Mulcĕō	-ĕrĕ	mulsi	mulsum	<i>soothe.</i>
2.	Ardĕō	-ĕrĕ	arsī	arsum	<i>take fire.</i>
3.	Rīdĕō	-ĕrĕ	rīsī	rīsum	<i>laugh.</i>
4.	Suādĕō	-ĕrĕ	suāsī	suāsum	<i>advise.</i>
5.	Mānĕō	-ĕrĕ	mansi	mansum	<i>remain.</i>
6.	Jūbĕō	-ĕrĕ	jussi	jussum	<i>command.</i>
7.	Haerĕō	-ĕrĕ	haesi	haesum	<i>stick.</i>
8.	Fulgĕō	-ĕrĕ	fulsi	—	<i>glitter.</i>
9.	Lūcĕō	-ĕrĕ	luxī	—	<i>shine.</i>

## Redupl., -sum.

(5) 1.	Mordĕō	-ĕrĕ	mōmordī	morsum	<i>bite.</i>
2.	Pendĕō	-ĕrĕ	pēpendī	pensum	<i>hang.</i>
3.	Spondĕō	-ĕrĕ	spōpondī	sponsum	<i>pledge, promise.</i>
4.	Tondĕō	-ĕrĕ	tōtondī	tonsum	<i>shear.</i>

## -ī, -sum.

(6) 1.	Prandĕō	-ĕrĕ	prandi	pransum	<i>lunch, dine.</i>
2.	Sĕdĕō	-ĕrĕ	sēdī	sessum	<i>sit.</i>
3.	Vīdĕō	-ĕrĕ	vīdī	vīsum	<i>see.</i>

## -ī, -tum.

(7) 1.	Cāvĕō	-ĕrĕ	cāvī	cautum	<i>beware.</i>
2.	Fāvĕō	-ĕrĕ	fāvī	fautum	<i>favour.</i>
3.	Fōvĕō	-ĕrĕ	fōvī	fōtum	<i>cherish.</i>
4.	Mōvĕō	-ĕrĕ	mōvī	mōtum	<i>move.</i>
5.	Vōvĕō	-ĕrĕ	vōvī	vōtum	<i>vow.</i>

## Semi-deponent.

(8) 1.	Audĕō	-ĕrĕ	ausŭs sum	—	<i>dare.</i>
2.	Gaudĕō	-ĕrĕ	gāvīsŭs sum	—	<i>rejoice.</i>
3.	Sōlĕō	-ĕrĕ	sōlitŭs sum	—	<i>be wont.</i>

III. THIRD CONJUGATION (Character a **Consonant** or **U**).

Form various. Rĕg-ĕrĕ; Indŭ-ĕrĕ.

## A. Consonant-Verbs.

Guttural Stems, -sī, -tum (*five -sum*).

(1) 1.	Dicō	-ĕrĕ	dixī	dictum	<i>say.</i>
2.	Dūcō	-ĕrĕ	duxī	ductum	<i>lead.</i>
3.	Cingō	-ĕrĕ	cinxī	cinctum	<i>surround.</i>
4.	Cōquō	-ĕrĕ	coxī	coctum	<i>cook.</i>
5.	Fīgō	-ĕrĕ	fixī	fixum	<i>fix.</i>
6.	Fīngō	-ĕrĕ	finxī	fictum	<i>fashion.</i>
7.	Jungō	-ĕrĕ	junxī	junctum	<i>join.</i>

	Present.	Infín.	Perfect.	Supine.	
	8. Píngō	-ĕřĕ	pinxī	pictum	<i>paint.</i>
	9. Rĕgō	-ĕřĕ	rexī	rectum	<i>rule.</i>
	10. Tĕgō	-ĕřĕ	texī	tectum	<i>cover.</i>
	11. -stinguō	-ĕřĕ	-stinxī	-stinctum	<i>quenched.</i>
	12. Tinguō	-ĕřĕ	tinxī	tinctum	<i>dye.</i>
	13. Unguō	-ĕřĕ	unxī	unctum	<i>anoint.</i>
(2)	1. Trāhō	-ĕřĕ	traxī	tractum	<i>draw.</i>
	2. Vĕhō	-ĕřĕ	vexī	vectum	<i>carry.</i>
	3. Vivō	-ĕřĕ	vixī	victum	<i>live.</i>
	4. Flūō	-ĕřĕ	fluxī	fluxum	<i>flow.</i>
	5. Strūō	-ĕřĕ	struxī	structum	<i>pile.</i>
	6. -lāciō	-ĕřĕ	-lexī	-lectum	<i>entice.</i>
	7. -spĕciō	-ĕřĕ	-spexī	-spectum	<i>espied.</i>
(3)	1. Mergō	-ĕřĕ	mersī	mersum	<i>drown.</i>
	2. Spargō	-ĕřĕ	sparsī	sparsum	<i>sprinkle.</i>
	3. Tergō	-ĕřĕ	tersī	tersum	<i>wipe.</i>

## Dental Stems, -sī, -sum.

(4)	1. Claudō	-ĕřĕ	clausī	clausum	<i>shut.</i>
	2. Divīdō	-ĕřĕ	dīvīsī	dīvīsum	<i>divide.</i>
	3. Laedō	-ĕřĕ	laesī	laesum	<i>hurt.</i>
	4. Lūdō	-ĕřĕ	lūsī	lūsum	<i>play.</i>
	5. Plaudō	-ĕřĕ	plausī	plausum	<i>clap the hands.</i>
	6. Rādō	-ĕřĕ	rāsī	rāsum	<i>scrape.</i>
	7. Rōdō	-ĕřĕ	rōsī	rōsum	<i>gnaw.</i>
	8. Trūdō	-ĕřĕ	trūsī	trūsūm	<i>thrust.</i>
	9. Vādō	-ĕřĕ	-vāsī	-vāsūm	<i>go.</i>
	10. Cādō	-ĕřĕ	cessī	cessum	<i>yield.</i>
	11. Mittō	-ĕřĕ	mīsī	missum	<i>send.</i>
	12. Quāt-īō	-ĕřĕ	(quassī)	quassum	<i>shake.</i>
	13. Flectō	-ĕřĕ	flexī	flexum	<i>bend.</i>
	14. Nectō	-ĕřĕ	nexī	nexum	<i>bind.</i>

## Labial Stems, -sī, -tum.

(5)	1. Carpō	-ĕřĕ	carpsī	carptum	<i>pluck.</i>
	2. Repō	-ĕřĕ	repsī	reptum	<i>creep.</i>
	3. Scalpō	-ĕřĕ	scalpsī	scalptum	<i>scratch.</i>
	4. Serpō	-ĕřĕ	(serpsī)	(serptum)	<i>crawl.</i>
	5. Nūbō	-ĕřĕ	nupsī	nuptum	<i>be married.</i>
	6. Scribō	-ĕřĕ	scripsī	scriptum	<i>write.</i>

## Liquid Stems, -sī, -tum (one -sum).

(6)	1. Cōmō	-ĕřĕ	compsī	comptum	<i>adorn.</i>
	2. Dēmō	-ĕřĕ	dempsī	demptum	<i>take away.</i>
	3. Prōmō	-ĕřĕ	prompsī	promptum	<i>take forth.</i>
	4. Sūmō	-ĕřĕ	sumpsī	sumptum	<i>take.</i>
	5. Temnō	-ĕřĕ	temp̄sī	temptum	<i>despise.</i>
	6. Prēmō	-ĕřĕ	pressī	pressum	<i>press.</i>
	7. Gērō	-ĕřĕ	gessī	gestum	<i>carry on.</i>
	8. Ūrō	-ĕřĕ	ussī	ustum	<i>burn.</i>



Stem various, -ŭī, -tum (*one -sum*).

	Present.	Infm.	Perfect.	Supine.	
(7) 1.	Ēlicīō	-ĕrĕ	ĕlicŭī	ĕlicĭtum	<i>entice forth.</i>
2.	Cumbō	-ĕrĕ	cŭbŭī	cŭbitum	<i>lie down.</i>
3.	Răpĭō	-ĕrĕ	răpŭī	raptum	<i>seize.</i>
4.	Strĕpō	-ĕrĕ	strĕpŭī	strĕpĭtum	<i>roar.</i>
5.	Mĕtō	-ĕrĕ	messŭī	messum	<i>mow.</i>
6.	Alō	-ĕrĕ	ălŭī	altum	<i>nourish.</i>
7.	Cōlō	-ĕrĕ	cōlŭī	cultum	<i>till.</i>
8.	Consŭlō	-ĕrĕ	consŭlŭī	consultum	<i>consult.</i>
9.	Occŭlō	-ĕrĕ	occŭlŭī	occultum	<i>hide.</i>
10.	Vōlō	-ĕrĕ	vōlŭī	—	<i>wish.</i>
11.	Frĕmō	-ĕrĕ	frĕmŭī	frĕmĭtum	<i>murmur.</i>
12.	Gĕmō	-ĕrĕ	gĕmŭī	gĕmĭtum	<i>groan.</i>
13.	Trĕmō	-ĕrĕ	trĕmŭī	—	<i>tremble.</i>
14.	Vōmō	-ĕrĕ	vōmŭī	vōmĭtum	<i>vomit.</i>
15.	Pōnō	-ĕrĕ	pōsŭī	pōsĭtum	<i>place.</i>
16.	Gignō	-ĕrĕ	gĕnŭī	gĕnĭtum	<i>produce.</i>
17.	Sĕrō	-ĕrĕ	sĕrŭī	sertum	<i>join.</i>
18.	Texō	-ĕrĕ	texŭī	textum	<i>weave.</i>

## Present Stem Anomalous, -vī, -tum.

(8) 1.	Lĭnō	-ĕrĕ	lĕvī	lĭtum	<i>smear.</i>
2.	Sĭnō	-ĕrĕ	sĭvī	sĭtum	<i>allow.</i>
3.	Cernō	-ĕrĕ	crĕvī	crĕtum	<i>sift, discern.</i>
4.	Spĕrnō	-ĕrĕ	sprĕvī	sprĕtum	<i>despise.</i>
5.	Sternō	-ĕrĕ	strāvī	strātum	<i>strew.</i>
6.	Sĕrō	-ĕrĕ	sĕvī	sātum	<i>sow.</i>
7.	Crescō	-ĕrĕ	crĕvī	crĕtum	<i>grow.</i> [with.
8.	Noscō	-ĕrĕ	nōvī	nōtum	<i>become acquainted</i>
9.	Pascō	-ĕrĕ	pāvī	pastum	<i>feed.</i>
10.	Quiĕscō	-ĕrĕ	quiĕvī	—	<i>rest.</i>
11.	Suescō	-ĕrĕ	suĕvī	suĕtum	<i>be wont.</i>
12.	Cupĭō	-ĕrĕ	cŭpĭvī	cŭpĭtum	<i>desire.</i>
13.	Pĕtō	-ĕrĕ	pĕtĭvī	pĕtĭtum	<i>seek.</i>
14.	Quaerō	-ĕrĕ	quaesĭvī	quaesĭtum	<i>seek.</i>
15.	Tĕrō	-ĕrĕ	trĭvī	trĭtum	<i>rub.</i>
16.	Arcessō	-ĕrĕ	arcessĭvī	arcessĭtum	<i>send for.</i>
17.	Lăcessō	-ĕrĕ	lăcessĭvī	lăcessĭtum	<i>provoke.</i>

## Redupl., -tum or -sum.

(9) 1.	Pendō	-ĕrĕ	pĕpendī	pensum	<i>weigh.</i>
2.	Tendō	-ĕrĕ	tĕtendī	tensum(-tum)	<i>stretch.</i>
3.	Discō	-ĕrĕ	dĭdĭcī	—	<i>learn.</i>
4.	Poscō	-ĕrĕ	pōposcī	—	<i>demand.</i>
5.	Currō	-ĕrĕ	cŭcurrī	cursum	<i>run.</i>
6.	Pungō	-ĕrĕ	pŭpŭgĭ	punctum	<i>prick.</i>
7.	Tundō	-ĕrĕ	tŭtŭdĭ	tunsum	<i>thump.</i>
8.	Fallō	-ĕrĕ	fĕfellĭ	falsum	<i>deceive.</i>
9.	Parcō	-ĕrĕ	pĕpercĭ	parsum	<i>spare.</i>
10.	Păriō	-ĕrĕ	pĕpĕrĭ	partum	<i>bring forth.</i>

	Present.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
11.	Cādō	-ērē	cēcīdī	cāsum	<i>fall.</i>
12.	Cānō	-ērē	cēcīnī	cantum	<i>sing.</i>
13.	Pangō	-ērē	pēpīgī	pactum	<i>fasten.</i>
14.	Tangō	-ērē	tētīgī	tactum	<i>touch.</i>
15.	Caedō	-ērē	cēcīdī	caesum	<i>cut, beat, kill.</i>
16.	Pellō	-ērē	pēpūlī	pulsum	<i>drive.</i>
17.	Tollō	-ērē	sustūlī	sublātum	<i>take up.</i>
18.	Compounds of dō :				
	Abdō	-ērē	abdīdī	abdītum	<i>hide.</i>
	Addō	-ērē	addīdī	addītum	<i>add.</i>
	Condō	-ērē	condīdī	condītum	<i>found, hide.</i>
	Crēdō	-ērē	crēdīdī	crēdītum	<i>believe.</i>
	Dēdō	-ērē	dēdīdī	dēdītum	<i>give up.</i>
	Ēdō	-ērē	ēdīdī	ēdītum	<i>give forth, utter.</i>
	Perdō	-ērē	perdīdī	perdītum	<i>lose.</i>
	Prōdō	-ērē	prōdīdī	prōdītum	<i>betray.</i>
	Reddō	-ērē	reddīdī	reddītum	<i>restore.</i>
	Subdō	-ērē	subdīdī	subdītum	<i>substitute.</i>
	Trādō	-ērē	trādīdī	trādītum	<i>deliver.</i>
	Vendō	-ērē	vendīdī	vendītum	<i>sell.</i>
19.	Reduplicated from stō :				
	Sistō	-ērē	-stītī	-stātum	{ <i>stand or make to stand.</i>

-ī with lengthened Stem-vowel, -tum (*three -sum*).

(10)	1. Fācīō	-ērē	fēcī	factum	<i>make.</i>
	2. Jācīō	-ērē	jēcī	jactum	<i>throw.</i>
	3. Līnquō	-ērē	līquī	-lictum	<i>leave.</i>
	4. Vīncō	-ērē	vīcī	victum	<i>conquer.</i>
	5. Āgō	-ērē	ēgī	actum	<i>do.</i>
	6. Frangō	-ērē	frēgī	fractum	<i>break.</i>
	7. Lēgō	-ērē	lēgī	lectum	<i>choose, read.</i>
	8. Ēdō	-ērē	edī	ēsūm	<i>eat.</i>
	9. Fōdīō	-ērē	fōdī	fossum	<i>dig.</i>
	10. Fundō	-ērē	fūdī	fūsūm	<i>pour.</i>
	11. Cāpīō	-ērē	cēpī	captum	<i>take.</i>
	12. Rumpō	-ērē	rūpī	ruptum	<i>break.</i>
	13. Ēmō	-ērē	ēmī	emptum	<i>buy, take.</i>

-ī, -sum.

(11)	1. Findō	-ērē	fīdī	fissum	<i>cleave.</i>
	2. Scindō	-ērē	scīdī	scissum	<i>tear.</i>

-ī, -sum (*one -tum*).

(12)	1. -candō	-ērē	-cendī	-censum	<i>set on fire.</i>
	2. -fendō	-ērē	-fendī	-fensum	<i>strike.</i>
	3. Pandō	-ērē	pandī	pansum	<i>spread.</i>
	4. Prēhendō	-ērē	prēhendī	prēhensum	<i>grasp.</i>
	5. Scandō	-ērē	scandī	scansum	<i>climb.</i>
	6. Vertō	-ērē	vertī	versum	<i>turn.</i>
	7. Bibō	-ērē	bībī	bībitum	<i>drink.</i>
	8. Vellō	-ērē	vellī, vulsī	vulsum	<i>rend.</i>

## B. U-verbs: -ī, -tum.

	Present.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
(13) 1.	Acūō	-ĕřĕ	ăcŭī	ăcŭtum	<i>sharpen.</i>
2.	Argŭō	-ĕřĕ	argŭī	argŭtum	<i>prove.</i>
3.	Exŭō	-ĕřĕ	exŭī	exŭtum	<i>put off.</i>
4.	Imbŭō	-ĕřĕ	imbŭī	imbŭtum	<i>tinge.</i>
5.	Indŭō	-ĕřĕ	indŭī	indŭtum	<i>put on.</i>
6.	Lŭō	-ĕřĕ	lŭī	lŭitum	<i>wash, atone.</i>
7.	Mĕtŭō	-ĕřĕ	mĕtŭī	—	<i>fear.</i>
8.	Mĭnŭō	-ĕřĕ	mĭnŭī	mĭnŭtum	<i>lessen.</i>
9.	Nŭō	-ĕřĕ	nŭī	—	<i>nod.</i>
10.	Rŭō	-ĕřĕ	rŭī	rŭitum	<i>rush, fall.</i>
11.	Stătŭō	-ĕřĕ	stătŭī	stătŭtum	<i>set up.</i>
12.	Trĭbŭō	-ĕřĕ	trĭbŭī	trĭbŭtum	<i>assign.</i>
13.	Solvō	-ĕřĕ	solvī	sŏlŭtum	<i>loosen.</i>
14.	Volvō	-ĕřĕ	volvī	vŏlŭtum	<i>roll.</i>

IV. FOURTH CONJUGATION (Character **Ī**: Audĭ-rĕ).

Usual Form :	-ĭō	-ĭřĕ	-ĭvĭ	-ĭtum
	Audĭō	-ĭřĕ	audĭvĭ	audĭtum.

## Exceptions.

-ŭī or ĭvĭ, -tum.

(1) 1.	Ăpĕřĭō	-ĭřĕ	ăpĕřŭī	ăpĕrtum	<i>open.</i>
2.	Sălĭō	-ĭřĕ	sălŭī	(-sultum)	<i>leap.</i>
3.	Sĕpĕlĭō	-ĭřĕ	sĕpĕlĭvĭ	sĕpultum	<i>bury.</i>
4.	Ĕō	ĭřĕ	ĭvĭ or ĭī	ĭtum	<i>go.</i>

-sĭ, -tum (one -sum).

(2) 1.	Fulĕĭō	-ĭřĕ	fulsĭ	furtum	<i>prop.</i>
2.	Sancĭō	-ĭřĕ	sanzĭ	sanctum	<i>consecrate.</i>
3.	Vincĭō	-ĭřĕ	vinxĭ	vinctum	<i>bind.</i>
4.	Haurĭō	-ĭřĕ	hausĭ	haustum	<i>drain.</i>
5.	Sentĭō	-ĭřĕ	sensĭ	sensum	<i>feel.</i>

-ĭ, -tum.

(3) 1.	Compĕřĭō	-ĭřĕ	compĕřĭ	compertum	<i>find.</i>
2.	Rĕpĕřĭō	-ĭřĕ	reppĕřĭ	rĕpĕrtum	<i>discover.</i>
3.	Vĕnĭō	-ĭřĕ	vĕnĭ	ventum	<i>come.</i>

## V. DEPONENT VERBS.

(1) FIRST CONJUGATION (Part. Perf. -ātūs).

(2) SECOND CONJUGATION (Part. Perf. -ītūs).

## Exceptions.

Present.	Infin.	Part. Perf.	
1. Fătĕōr	-ĕrī	fassūs	<i>confess.</i>
2. Mīsĕrĕōr	-ĕrī	mīsertūs or mīsĕrītūs	<i>have pity on.</i>
3. Rĕōr	-ĕrī	rātūs	<i>think.</i>

(3) THIRD CONJUGATION (Part. Perf. -tūs or -sūs).

	Present.	Infin.	Part. Perf.	
(a) 1.	Fungōr	-ī	functūs	<i>perform.</i>
2.	Amplectōr	-ī	amplexūs	<i>embrace.</i>
3.	Nītōr	-ī	nīsūs or nixūs	<i>strive.</i>
4.	Pātīōr	-ī	passūs	<i>suffer.</i>
5.	Ūtōr	-ī	ūsūs	<i>use.</i>
6.	Grādīōr	-ī	gressūs	<i>step.</i>
7.	Lāhōr	-ī	lapsūs	<i>glide.</i>
8.	Mōrīōr	-ī	mortūtūs	<i>die.</i>
9.	Quĕrōr	-ī	questūs	<i>complain.</i>
10.	Frūōr	-ī	frūtūs	<i>enjoy.</i>
11.	Lōquōr	-ī	lōcūtūs	<i>speak.</i>
12.	Sĕquōr	-ī	sĕcūtūs	<i>follow.</i>
(b) 1.	Āpiscōr	-ī	aptūs	<i>obtain.</i>
2.	Commīniscōr	-ī	commentūs	<i>devise.</i>
3.	Expĕrgiscōr	-ī	experrectūs	<i>wake up.</i>
4.	Fātiscōr	-ī	fessūs	<i>grow weary.</i>
5.	Īrascōr	-ī	īrātūs	<i>be angry.</i>
6.	Nanciscōr	-ī	nactūs	<i>obtain.</i>
7.	Nascōr	-ī	nātūs	<i>be born.</i>
8.	Oblīviscōr	-ī	oblītūs	<i>forget.</i>
9.	Pāciscōr	-ī	pactūs	<i>bargain.</i>
10.	Prōfĕiscōr	-ī	prōfĕctūs	<i>set out.</i>
11.	Ulciscōr	-ī	ultūs	<i>avenge.</i>

(4) FOURTH CONJUGATION (Part. Perf. -ītūs).

## Exceptions.

1.	Assentīōr	-īrī	assensūs	<i>agree to.</i>
2.	Expĕrīōr	-īrī	expertūs	<i>try.</i>
3.	Mĕtīōr	-īrī	mensūs	<i>measure.</i>
4.	Oppĕrīōr	-īrī	oppertūs	<i>wait for.</i>
5.	Ordīōr	-īrī	orsūs	<i>begin.</i>
6.	Orīōr	-īrī	ortūs	<i>rise.</i>

*Note.* Inceptive Verbs form the Perfect and Supine as their Primitives: as, ingĕmiscō (from gĕmō), ingĕmūt, ingĕmītum. Many Verbs are without Perfect; more still without Supine.

## PARTICLES.

## A. ADVERBS.

§ 82. I. ADVERBS OF PLACE answer the questions:—

- |                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 1) Ūbī, <i>where?</i>           | (4) Undě, <i>whence?</i>                |
| 2) Quō, <i>whither?</i>         | (5) Quā, <i>which way?</i>              |
| 3) Quorsum, <i>whitherward?</i> | (6) Quātēnūs, quōusquē, <i>how far?</i> |

II. ADVERBS OF TIME answer the questions:

- (1) Quandō, ūbī, *when?*      (2) Quamdīū, *how long?*

III. ADVERBS OF NUMBER answer the question Quōtīēs, *how often?*

IV. ADVERBS OF DESCRIPTION express Manner, Quality, Quantity, etc.

Many are derived from Adjectives, and end in ē, tēr; as, pulchrē, *finely*; misērē, *wretchedly*; fortitēr, *bravely*; sāpientēr, *wisely*.

Note. Adverbs of Negation are nōn, haud, *not*.

## B. PREPOSITIONS.

§ 83. The following Prepositions take the Accusative Case.

Ad, <i>to, at, &amp;c.</i>	Juxtā, <i>adjoining to, beside.</i>
Adversūs } <i>toward, against.</i>	Ōb, <i>over against, by reason of.</i>
Adversum }	Pēnēs, <i>in the power of.</i>
Antē, <i>before.</i>	Pēr, <i>through.</i>
Apūd, <i>at, in, among.</i>	Pōnē, <i>behind.</i>
Circum, <i>around.</i>	Post, <i>after, behind.</i>
Circā, circitēr, <i>about.</i>	Praetēr, <i>beside.</i>
Cīs, citrā, <i>on the near side of.</i>	Prōpē, <i>near, prōpiūs, proximē.</i>
Contrā, <i>against, over against.</i>	Proptēr, <i>nigh, on account of.</i>
Ergā, <i>towards.</i>	Sēcundum, <i>next, along, according to.</i>
Extrā, <i>outside of, out of.</i>	Sūprā, <i>above.</i>
Infrā, <i>below.</i>	Trans, <i>across.</i>
Intēr, <i>between, among, amidst.</i>	Ultrā, <i>beyond.</i>
Intrā, <i>within.</i>	Versūs, Versum, <i>towards.</i>

The following take the Ablative Case.

A, āb, abs, <i>by, from.</i>	Ex, ē, <i>out of, from.</i>
Absquē (rare), <i>without.</i>	Pālam, <i>in sight of.</i>
Clām, <i>without the knowledge of.</i>	Prae, <i>before, owing to, compared with.</i>
Cōram, <i>in the presence of.</i>	Prō, <i>before, for, instead of.</i>
Cum, <i>with.</i>	Sinē, <i>without.</i>
Dē, <i>down from, from, concerning.</i>	Tēnūs, <i>reaching to, as far as.</i>

Note. Cum is attached to the Personal, Reflexive, and Relative Pronouns; as, mēcum, nōbiscum, tēcum, vōbiscum, sēcum, quōcum, or quīcum, quibuscum.



The following take the Accusative or the Ablative.

Īn, into, against (Acc.), in, upon, among (Abl.). Sŭpĕr, over, upon.  
Sŭb, up to, under (Acc.), under (Abl.). Subtĕr, under.

Īn and sŭb with Accusative imply motion; with Ablative, rest.

II. The Prepositions and Particles compounded with Verbs are:—

A. Prepositions:—ā, āb, abs, ād, antĕ, circum, con (for cum), dĕ, ex, ē, ĩn, intĕr, ōb, pĕr, post, prae, praetĕr, prō, sŭb, subtĕr, sŭper, trans.

B. Inseparable Particles:—ambi- (amb-), around, about; dis-, in different parts or ways; rĕ-, back, again; sĕ-, apart.

Note 1. Prepositions in composition suffer various changes; such as, combĭbō for combĭbō, offendō for obfendō, trādŭcō for transdŭcō.

Note 2. Many Verbs in Composition suffer vowel-change: (1) *a* into *e*, as spargō, dispĕrgō; (2) *a* into *u*, as quātĭō, concŭtĭō; (3) *a* into *i*, as, āgō, exĭgō; (4) *e* into *i*, as rĕgō, dirĭgō; (5) *ae* into *i*, as, quaerō, acquĭrō. Add to these, claudō, exclŭdō, &c.; plaudō, supplōdō, &c.; and audĭō, ōbĕdĭō.

## C. CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 84. CONJUNCTIONS are—

1. Coordinative, or those which join words and sentences but do not affect Mood: as, ĕt, quĕ, ac, atquĕ (*and*), aut, vĕl, vĕ (*either, or*), sĕd, autem (*but*), nam, ĕnim (*for*), &c.
2. Subordinative, or those which join sentences, influencing Mood: as, ŭt (*that*), nĕ (*lest*), quōd, quĭā (*because*), quum (*when, since*), sĭ (*if*), nisi (*unless*), &c., &c.

§ 85. The Interrogative Particles cannot be rendered in English without the Verbs, to which they impart an Interrogative force:—

They are, the enclitic -nĕ, ān, num, ŭtrum (*whether*): the compounds of the last three with -nĕ; namely, annĕ, numnĕ, ŭtrumnĕ: and the compounds of ān, -nĕ, with the negative; namely, annōn, nonnĕ.

## D. INTERJECTIONS.

§ 86. An Interjection is an exclamatory word, used either to draw attention, or to express feeling of some kind. The most usual Interjections are—

Ō, O! oh!	Prō or prōh, forbid it!
Ā or āh, alas!	Vae, woe!
Ēheu,	Ēn, } lo! behold!
Heu, hei, } alas!	Eccĕ, }

Note. Of these, O, ā, ĕheu, heu, prō, may be used with a Vocative Case: the same, as well as ĕn, eccĕ, with a Nominative or Accusative: hei, vae, with a Dative.

## SYNTAX.

### PREFATORY EXCURSION.

§ 87. A. A Simple Sentence is the expression of a single thought :

Psittăcūs lōquītūr,  
*The parrot speaks.*

Psittăcūs nōn lōquītūr,  
*The parrot does not speak.*

B. That of which something is said, is called the Subject: as, Psittăcūs, *the parrot.*

a. The Subject must be a Substantive, or a Noun-term which can take its place, as an Adjective, Pronoun, Infinitive, or Clause.

C. The Finite Verb, which declares what is said of the Subject, and makes a complete sense, is called the Predicate: as, Lōquītūr, *speaks.*

a. Since Pronoun Subjects are implied in the Endings (§ 44 *Obs.*), a single Verb may be a sentence :

Vēnī,  
*I came,*

Vīdī,  
*I saw,*

Vīcī,  
*I conquered.*

D. Any Finite part of the Verb sum (essē), *to be*, is usually a Cōpŭlă, or *Link*; and a word linked by it to the Subject, and completing the sense, is called the Complement; both together forming the Predicate :

Subject.	Copula.	Predicate.
		┌───────────┐
		Copula.      Complement.
Hōmō	est	mortālīs,
<i>Man</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>mortal.</i>
Hōmīnēs	sunt	ănimăliă,
<i>Men</i>	<i>are</i>	<i>animals.</i>

*Note.* The Copula is often omitted : as, Rārī bōnī, (*good men are few*).

a. Other Verbs besides sum link a Subject and Complement, and are called Copulative Verbs: as, fiō, *become*; nascōr, *am born*; vīdēōr, *seem*; dicōr, *am said*; vōcōr, *am called*; pŭtōr, *am thought*, &c.

E. An Adjective agreeing with any Noun-term is said to be in Attribution, and may be (1) Epithet; (2) Attributive Complement.

(1) Doctī vīrī,  
*Learned men.*

(2) Hī vīrī sunt doctī,  
*These men are learned.*

2. A Substantive agreeing with any Noun-term is said to be in Apposition, and may be (1) Epithetic; (2) Appositive Complement.

(1) Rex Croesūs,  
*King Croesus.*

(2) Croesūs fŭit rex,  
*Croesus was king.*

## SYNTAXIS MEMORIALIS PRIMA.

## DE CONGRUENTIA.

## REGULAE QUATTUOR GENERALES.

§ 88. I. Verbum Finitum cum Nominativō Subjecti congruit  
nūmērō et persōnā:

Māgister docet.  
Lībrī leguntur.

Tū docēs: nōs discimus.  
Discere est utile.

§ 89. II. Adjectivum generē, nūmērō, et cāsū congruit cum  
eō cui attribuitur:

Vīr bonus illē bonam hanc uxōrem habet.  
Hīrundō pullis suis orbātā queritur.  
Cārī sunt parentēs; cārā est patriā.  
Pūērī discendō fiunt doctī.

§ 90. III. Substantivum cāsū congruit cum eō cui appō-  
nitur:

Nōs pūērī patrem Lollīum imitābimur.  
Effodiuntur opēs, irritāmentā malōrum.  
Spēs est expectatiō bonī.  
Syllābā longā brevī subjectā vocātur Iambus.

§ 91. IV. Rēlativum cum Antecedentē congruit generē,  
nūmērō, et persōnā; sed cāsū spectat suam clausulam:

Dēum vērāmur quī nōs creāvit.  
Amīcus est, quem amāmus, a quō amāmur.  
Amōtē, mātēr, quae mē amās.

## DE SUBJECTO COMPOSITO.

§ 92. Cum Subjectō Compōsitō plūrālī congruunt:

Vēnēō absumpti sunt Hannībāl et Philōpemēn.

1. In diversitatē persōnarum Verbā congruunt cum Priōrē  
Persōnā:

Sī tū et Tullīā vālētis, egō et Cicērō vālēmūs.

2. În diversitate genurum Adjectivă congruunt cum Masculō pōtiūs quam cum Fēmininō :

Pătēr mīhī ēt mātēr *mortūi* sunt.

a. Rēbūs inānimīs attribūitūr saepē genūs Neutrum :  
Dīvītiaē, dēcūs, glōriă în ocūlis *sūt* sunt.

## DE CASIBUS.

DE CASIBUS SUBJECTI ET COMPLEMENTI. § 87.

§ 93. (1) Finīti Verbī Subjectum Nōmīnātīvūs est :  
*Annī* fūgūnt.

(2) Finīti Verbī Complēmentum plērumquē Nōmīnātīvūs est :

Vītă est *somnūm*. | Nēmō nascitūr *săpiens*.

§ 94. (1) Infīnītivī Subjectum în Accūsātīvō pōnitūr :  
Constăt *annōs* fūgērē. | Scīmūs *annōs* fūgērē.

(2) Infīnītivī Complēmentum plērumquē în Accūsātīvō pōnitūr :

Aiunt vītam essē *somnūm*.  
Constăt nēmīnem nascī *săpiētem*.

a. Accūsātivī cum Infīnītivō constructiō vōcătūr Eñunciātiō Obliquă.

## DE ACCUSATIVO.

§ 95. Accūsātivūs est Cāsūs Prōpīōris Objectī. Necnōn līmitandī vim hăbēt.

## I. ACCUSATIVUS OBJECTI.

§ 96. Verbă Transītivă rēgunt Accūsātivum Objectī :  
Mătēr ālit *pullōs*. | În primīs vĕnĕrărē *Dĕum*.

§ 97. Intransītivă căpiunt Accūsātivum vī cognātă :  
Dūram *servit* *servitūtem*.  
Claudiūs *alĕam* lūsīt.

§ 98. Verbă quaedam, *rögandī* praesertim et *döcendī*, bīnös admittunt Accūsātīvös, hunc Rēi, illum Persōnae :

Nunquam *dīvītās döös rögāvī*.  
Quīd nunc *tē littērās döcēam*?

§ 99. Verbă Factitīvā, scilicet *fāciendī*, *vöcandī*, *pütandī*, similitā, bīnös hābent Accūsātīvös, hunc Objectī, illum Complementī :

*Tē* fācimus, Fortūnā, *dēam*.  
*Römülüs urbem* suā *Römam* vöcāvīt.

## II. ACCUSATIVUS LIMITATIONIS.

§ 100. Accūsātīvūs Respectūs adjungitūr Verbīs et Adjectivīs, praesertim apūd pöētās :

Trēmīt *artūs*. | Nūdae sunt *läcertös*.

§ 101. Löcūs, *Quō* itūr, in Accūsātivō pönitūr, idquē sinē Praepösitiönē, sī vėl oppidī nömēn est, vėl *dömüs, rūs* :

Rēgülūs *Carthāginem* rēdiīt.  
Vös itē *dömum* : egö *rūs* ibō.

§ 102. (1) Dūrātiō Tempöris in Accūsātivō pönitūr :

Pēriclēs *quādrāgintā annös* praefiūt *Äthēnis*.

(2) Mensūrā Spätīi in Accūsātivō pönitūr :

Ērant mūrī *Bābylōnis dūcēnös pēdēs* altī.

§ 103. Accūsātivum rēgunt multae Praepösitiönēs : § 83.

*Antē*, apūd, *ād*, *adversūs*,  
*Circum*, *circā*, *citrā*, *cīs*,  
*Contrā*, *intēr*, *ergā*, *extrā*,  
*Infrā*, *intrā*, *juxtā*, *öb*,  
*Pēnēs*, *pönē*, *post*, et *praetēr*,

*Pröpē*, *proptēr*, *pēr*, *sēcundum*,  
*Sūprā*, *versūs*, *ultrā*, *trans* ;  
*His sūpēr*, *subtēr*, *additō*,  
Et *in*, *süb*, sī fit mōtiō.

## DE DATIVO.

§ 104. Dätivūs est Cāsūs Rēcipientīs seu Rēmōtiöris Objectī.

§ 105. Trājectivā, quae sensum trājiciunt ad Rēmōtiūs Objectum, sunt multā Adjectivā, Adverbīā, et Verbā, rārīūs Substantivā, quībūs indicātūr

*Pröpinquātās* et *Dēmonstrātiō*,  
*Grātīficātiō*, *Dömnātiō*,  
Et hīs contrāriā quaequē nōtiō.



§ 106. I. Trājectivā cāpiunt Dātivum, quum signīficantūr :

(1) Prōpinquitās ēt contrāriā :

Est finitimus oratorī poetā.  
Nil fuit unquam sic impar sibi.  
Congruentē naturae vivendum est.  
Praesentiā confēr praeteritis.  
Nec tamen ignorat quid distent aerā lupinis.

(2) Dēmōstratiō ēt contrāriā :

Dic mihi, Dāmoetā, cūjum pēcūs?  
Anguis Sullae apparuit immolanti.  
Haud cuiquam in dubio erat bellum imminere.

(3) Grātificatiō ēt contrāriā :

Patriae sit idoneus, utilis agris.  
Turbā gravis paci placidaeque inimicā quieti.  
Quod aui donat sibi detrahit.  
Lūcem reddē tuae, dux bonē, patriae.  
Nobis spondet fortunā salutem.  
Nē libeāt tibi quod nemini licet.  
Parcē pio generi.  
Succensere nefas patriae.  
Resistendum est appetitibus.

(4) Dōminatiō ēt contrāriā :

Sapiens, sibi qui imperiosus.  
Omnibus simplex est.  
Imperat aut servit collectā pecuniā cuique.  
Mundus Deo parat, et huic obediunt maria terraeque.

§ a. Intēr Trājectivā sunt multā Verbā compōsitā cum Particulīs, quālēs sunt

Bēnē, malē, sātis, rē,  
Ad, antē, cōn, in, intēr, dē,  
Ob, sūb, supēr, post, ēt prae :

Ceteris satisfaciō sempēr, mihi nunquam.  
Siciliā quondam Italiae adhaesit.  
Gigantes bellum dis intulerunt.  
Anatum ova gallinis supponimus.

§ 107. II. Dātivūs Rēcipientis ūbivīs adjungī pōtest cum nōtiōnē quādam Commōdī vėl Incommōdī :

Esto, ut nunc multī, dīves tibi, pauper amicus.  
Numā virginēs Vestae legit.  
Venus nupsit Vulcano.  
Philosophiae sempēr vacō.

a. Hūc rēfēr Dātivum Prōnōminis, quī vōcātūr ēthī-  
cus :

Quid mihi Celsus agit?

b. *Sum* cum compositis, praeter *possum*, caput Dativum :

*Sum tibi* Mercūrius.  
*Vir mihi* semp̄r̄ ā b̄ est.

c. *Est, sunt*, cum Dativō, *hābērē* saep̄ significat :

*Est hōmīnī* cum Dēō similitūdō.  
*Sunt nōbīs* mītiā pōma.

d. Adjungit̄r̄ idem Dativūs Participiis et Participiālib̄s Passivae Vōcis, praesertim Gērundivis :

*Magnus civis* obit et *formidatus* *Ōthōnī*.  
*Multis* illē *bōnīs* flēbilis occidit.  
*Legendae* sunt *pūērīs* Aesōpī fabūlae.

§ 108. III. Dativūs Rēi prō Complēmentō pōnit̄r̄, adjunctō saep̄ Dativō Rēcipientis :

*Nimīa fiduciā cālāmitātī* solēt esse.  
*Exitio* est avidum mārē *nautīs*.

§ 109. IV. Dativūs Complēmentī p̄r Attractiōnem pōnit̄r̄, praesertim in nōmīnandī formūlis :

*Licūt Thēmistōclī* esse *ōtīōsō*.  
*Huic* egō diēi nōmēn *Trīnūmō* faciā.

---

## DE ABLATIVO.

§ 110. Ablativūs est Cāsūs rērum quae circumstant et adverbīālī mōrē līmitant actiōnem. Dēfīnit etiā Tempūs et Lōcum.

§ 111. I. Ablativūs Causae :

*Ōdērunt* peccārē bōnī virtūtīs *āmōre*.  
*Cocptīs* *immānībūs* effērā *Didō*.

§ 112. II. Ablativūs Instrūmentī :

*Hī jācūtīs*, illī certant dēfendērē *saxīs*.

§ 113. III. Ablativūs Mōdī :

*Injūrīa* fit *dūōbūs* mōdīs, aut *vī* aut *fraudē*.

§ 114. IV. Ablativūs Conditiōnis :

*Pacē* *tūā* cum Thāidē collōquār.  
*Hōmō* *mēā* *sententiā* prūdētissimūs est.

## § 115. V. Ablatīvūs Quālitātīs, cum Epithētō :

*Quā faciē fūit, cui dēdistī symbolum ?*  
*Sēnex prōmissā barbā, horrentī cāpillō.*

## § 116. VI. Ablatīvūs Rēspectūs :

*Angōr ānīmō.*  
*Ennīūs ingēnō maxīmūs, artē rūdis.*

## § 117. VII. Ablatīvūs Prētī :

*Ěgō spem prētīō nōn ěmō.*  
*Quōd nōn ōpūs est, assē cārum est.*

## § 118. VIII. Ablatīvūs Mensūrae :

*Longum sesquīpēdē, lātum pēdē est.*  
*Sōl multīs partībūs mājōr est quam lūnā.*  
*Tantō pessīmūs omnīum pōētā,*  
*Quantō tu optīmūs omnīum patrōnūs.*

## § 119. IX. Ablatīvūs Mātēriae :

*Cībūs ěōrum lactē, cāsēō, carnē constāt.*

*a. Ablatīvum rēgunt: (1) Verbā fungōr, frūōr, ūtōr, vescōr, pōtīōr, dignōr; (2) Adjectīvā dignūs, indignūs, contentūs, frētūs, praeditūs; (3) Substantīvā ōpūs, ūsūs :*

(1) *Fungar vīcē cōtīs.*  
*Hannībāl, cum victōriā possēt ūtī, frūī mālūt.*  
*Rex impiūs aurō vī pōtītur. § 133.*

(2) *Dignum laudē vīrum Mūsā vētat mōrī.*

(3) *Ūbī rēs adsunt, quīd ōpūs est verbīs ?*  
*Ūsūs est filiō vīgintī mīnīs.*

*b. Ex Adjectīvīs ět Verbīs ābundandī věl ěgendī, ditandī věl prīvandī, plērāquē Ablatīvum cāpiunt, multā ětīam Gēnī-tīvum :*

*Āmōr ět mellē ět fellē est fēcundīssīmūs.*  
*Nunquam ānīmūs mōtū vācūūs est.*  
*Vīs consīli expers mōlē rūit sūā.*  
*Mancīpīs lōcūplēs ěgět aeris Cappādocum rex.*  
*Vācārē culpā maxīmum est sōlātium.*

§ 120. X. Ablatīvūs Tempōris respondēt, sī rōgātūr *Quandō ?*  
*Intrā quantum tempūs ? Quantō tempōrē antē věl post ?*

*Hīēmē omnīā bellā conquiescunt.*  
*Quidquīd est bīdūō scīēmūs.*  
*Hōmērūs annīs multīs fūit antē Rōmūlum.*

§ 121. XI. A. Ablatīvūs Lōcī pōnītūr sīnē Praepōsītīōnē,  
 cum rōgātūr, *Quā vīā ?*

*Ībam fortē Vīā Sācrā.*

B. Ablatīvūs saepē cārēt Praepōsitiōnē, cum rōgātūr *Ūbī?*  
maximē, sī oppidī nōmēn est, vēl sī stāt cum Ēpithētō :

Philippūs *Nēāpōlī* est, Lentūlūs *Pūtēōlīs*.  
Tābernae *tōtā urbē* clauduntūr.

a. Oppidōrum nōmīnā singulārīā ex Dēclinātiōnē primā et  
sēcundā lōcum stātiōnis dēfīniunt pēr cāsūs in *ae, ī* :

Quid *Rōmae* faciām? | Īs hābitāt *Mīlētī*.

b. Simīlīā sunt *hūmī, dōmī, bellī, mīlītīae, rurī* :

Caesārīs virtūs *dōmī mīlītīaeque* cognītā est.

C. Ablatīvūs oppidī Praepōsitiōnē cārēt, cum rōgātūr *Undē?*

Dēmārātūs fūgīt *Cōrīnthō*.

a. Ītā *dōmō, rurē*. (Dē Accūsātīvō Lōcī *Quō* itūr, v. § 101.)

§ 122. XII. Ablatīvum rēgunt vāriāe Praepōsitiōnēs :

<i>A, āb, absque, cōram, dē, Pālam, clam, cum, ex, et ē, Sīnē, tēnūs, prō, et prae :</i>	<i>Hīs sup̄er, subt̄er, sub̄ addē- mūs, Ēt in, dē stātū sī dicēmūs.</i>
--	---

a. Praepōsitiōnēs ētīam compōsītae rēgunt Ablatīvum, prae-  
sertim *āb, dē, ex* :

Quinetiūs *dictātūrā* sē abdicāvīt.  
Dētrūdunt nāvēs *scōpūlō*.

b. Ablatīvūs Āgentis expētīt Praepōsitiōnem *ā, āb* :

Laudātūr āb *hīs*, culpātūr āb *illīs*.

§ 123. XIII. Ablatīvūs Sēpārātiōnis et Orīgīnis ētīam sīnē  
Praepōsitiōnē Verbīs et Partīcīpiīs adjungītūr :

Cēdēs cōemptīs *saltībūs* et *dōmō*.  
*Pēlōpē* nātūs, *Tantālō* prognātūs est.

§ 124. XIV. Ablatīvūs Rēi Compārātae :

(1) Prō *quam* cum Nōmīnātīvō :

Nīhīl est āmābilīūs *virtūtē*.  
Vilīūs argentum est *aurō, virtūtībūs* aurum.

(2) Prō *quam* cum Accūsātīvō :

Pūtō mortem *dēdēcōrē* lēviōrem.  
Nēmīnem *Ljēurgō* ūtiliōrem Spartā gēnūit.

§ 125. XV. Substantīvum cum Partīcīpiō cōālescīt in  
Ablatīvō, quī vōcātūr Absōlūtūs :

*Rēgībūs exactīs* consulēs crēātī sunt.

a. Prō Participiō saepē supplētūr altērum Substantivum  
vĕl Adjectivum :

Nil despērandum Teucrō *dūce* et *auspicē* Teucrō.  
Nātūs est Augustūs *consūlībūs* Cicerōnē et Antōniō.  
Jamquē cinis, *vivīs* frātrībūs, Hector ērat.  
Quid dicam, *hāc* iuventūtē?

## DE GENITIVO.

§ 126. Gēnitivūs, Cāsūs Possidentis, nōmīnā plērumquē  
dēfīnit vĕl subjectivē vĕl objectivē.

## A. GENITIVUS SUBJECTIVUS.

§ 127. I. Gēnitivūs Auctōris et Possessōris.

*Pōlyclētī* signā plānē perfectā sunt.  
*Singulōrum* opēs sunt dīvitiae civitātis.  
Omniā, quae *mūliērīs* fūerunt, *vīrī* fīunt.  
Eā stātūā dicēbātūr esse *Myrōnis*.

a. Interdum Gēnitivūs pendēt ā suppressā vōcē :

*Hectōris* Andrōmāchē (supplē *uxōr*).  
Ventum ērat ad *Vestae* (supplē *templum*).

b. Gēnitivūs itā stāt, ūt supplērī possit

*Indōlēs*, *indīcīum*,  
*Mūnūs* aut *offīcīum* :

Cūjusvīs *hōmīnis* est errārē.  
Est *ādōlescentīs* mājōrēs nātū vērērī.  
Tempōrī cēdērē hābētūr *sāpīentīs*.

§ 128. II. Gēnitivūs Quālitātis, cum Ēpithētō :

*Ingēnūī* vultūs pūer *ingēnūī*quē pūdōris.  
Claudiūs ērat *somnī* *brēvissīmī*.

a. Nōtentūr ellipticī Gēnitivī, *parvī*, *mīnōrīs*, *mīnīmī*, *magnī*,  
*plūrīs*, *plūrīmī*, *tantī*, *quantī*, *maxīmī*, quībūs supplē *prētīī* :

Vōluptātem virtūs *mīnīmī* faciit.  
Ēmīt hortōs *tantī* *quantī* Pŷthiūs vōlūt.

§ 129. III. *Intērest*, *rēfert*, Gēnitivum admittunt :

*Intērest* *omniūm* rectē faciērē.  
*Rēfert* *compōsitiōnis* quae quībūs antēpōnās.

a. Ēādē prō Gēnitivīs Prōnōmīnum ūsurpant cāsūs Pos-  
sessivōs *mēā*, *tūā*, *sūā*, *nostrā*, *vestrā*, *cūjā*, cum *rē* congruentēs :

Ēt *tūā* et *mēā* intērest tē vālērē.  
Quid *nostrā* id rēfert?



§ 130. IV. A. Gënitivŭs Rëi Distribŭtae Partitivis adjungitur, quae, quantum licet, Gënitivī sūmunt gënŭs :

Ĕlëphantō *bëluārum* est nullā prŭdentior.  
 Hōminī ũnī *ānimantium* luctŭs est datŭs.  
 Sullā centum vīginti *sŭōrum* āmisit.  
 Mājor *Nërōnum* mox gravē praelium commisit.  
*Gallōrum* fortissimī sunt Belgae.  
 Nēmō *mortālium* omnibŭs hōris sāpit.  
*Piscium* fëminae mājorës sunt quam mārës.  
 Sëquimur tē, sanctē *dëōrum*.  
 Hōc ād tē minimē *omnium* pertinet.

a. *Nostrūm, vestrūm*, Partitivā sęquuntŭr :

Tē vënirē ũterquë *nostrūm* cŭpit.

§ 131. B. Gënitivŭs Rëi Dëmensae Vöcābulā Quantitātis ęt Neutrā Adjectivā sęquitur :

Sātis *ęloquentiae, sāpientiae* parum est.  
 Aliquid *pristinī rōboris* conservāt.  
 Quantum *numōrum*, tantum *fidē* est.

## B. GENITIVUS OBJECTIVUS.

§ 132. I. Gënitivŭs objectivē jungitur Substantivis, Adjectivis, aut Participiis, quibŭs transitivā quaedam vis est, praesertim si significant

*Përitiam, cŭram, dësiderium,*  
 Vël quidquid ęrit hīs contrārium :

Insitus est menti *cognitiōnis* amor.  
 Difficilis est *cŭrā rërum āliënārum*.  
 Tempŭs *ędax rërum* est.  
 Corpŭs *pātens inēdiae* fuit.  
 Consciā mens *recti* est.  
 Impëritŭs *mōrum* fuit.  
 Avidā est *përicŭli* virtŭs.  
 Animŭs fuit *āliënī* appetens, sŭi pŭfŭsus.

a. *Mëi, tuī, sŭi, nostrī, vestrī*, objectivē pōnuntŭr; subjectivē, *mëus, tuŭs, sŭus, nostër, vestër* :

Niciās *tuā sŭi* mëmōriā dëlectātŭr.

(a) Gënitivŭs Subjectivŭs in Possessivō lätens Gënitivum sibi congruentem rëcipit :

Respublicā *mëā ünŭs* öpërā salvā ęrāt.  
 Avës fëtŭs ādultōs *sŭae ipsōrum* fidŭciae permittunt.

§ 133. II. Gēnītīvūs adjungītūr Verbīs ēt Adjectīvīs, ā quībūs signīficātūr

*Pōtentīā ēt impōtentīā,      Damnātīō, absolūtīō,  
Criminātīō, innōcentīā,      Mēmōriā ēt oblīvīō:*

- (1) Rōmānī *signōrum* pōtītī sunt. § 119 a.  
Irā est impōtens sūi.
- (2) Frāternī est *sanguīnis* insons.  
Rē ūs est *injuriārum*.
- (3) Pētillīus *furtī* absolūtūs est.  
Condemnāmūs hāruspicēs *stultitiāe*.
- (4) Rēs adversae admōnent nōs *rēligiōnum*.  
Omnēs immēmōrem *bēnēficiī* ōdērunt.

a. Mēmīnī, rēmīniscōr, rēcordōr, oblīviscōr, Gēnītīvum vėl Accūsātīvum admittunt:

Jūbet *mortīs* tē mēmīnissē Dēus.  
Dulcēs mōriens rēmīniscītūr *Argos*.

§ 134. III. *Pigēt, pūdēt, paenītēt, taedēt* atquē *mīsērēt*, Impersōnālīā, Gēnītīvum cāpiunt cum Accūsātīvō:

*Mīsērēt tē āliōrum: tūi* nēc *mīsērēt* nēc *pūdēt*.  
*Ēōs* partim *scēlērūm*, partim *ineptiārum* paenītēt.

§ 135. IV. *Mīsērēōr, mīsērescō* Gēnītīvum cāpiunt; *mīsērōr, commīsērōr*, Accūsātīvum:

Arcādīi, quaesō, *mīsērescītē rēgis*.  
*Sortem* *mīsērātūr* inīquam.

§ 136. V. Gēnītīvūs ā pōētīs libērē ūsurpātūr. Sēd *aegēr ānīmī, ānīmī pendēō*, simīliā, ētīam in solūtā ōrātīōnē compārent.

#### DE CASIBUS EXTRA SENTENTIAM.

§ 137. Vōcātīvūs extrā sententiām stāt vėl sinē Interjectīōnē vėl cum Interjectīōnē: § 86.

Ōrō tē, *filī* (vėl *O filī*).

§ 138. Nōmīnātīvūs ēt Accūsātīvūs in exclāmandō ūsurpantūr vėl sinē Interjectīōnē vėl cum Interjectīōnē:

- |                        |                          |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| (1) <i>Infandum!</i>   | Eccē <i>nōvā turbā!</i>  |
| (2) <i>Mē mīsērūm!</i> | Ēn <i>quattuōr ārās!</i> |

§ 139. Itā Dātīvūs pōnītūr cum *hei! vae!*:

*Hei mīsērō mīhī!*      |      *Vae victīs!*

## DE VERBO INFINITO.

§ 140. I. Infinitivum stăt—

1. Substantivē, prō Nōminātivō vĕl Accūsātivō :

- (1) *Invidēre* nōn cādīt īn sāpiētem.  
Dulce et dēcōrum est prō patriā *mōrī*.  
(2) *Mōrī* nēmō sāpiens misērum dixērit.

2. Praedicātivē, īn narrandō, prō Verbō Finitō :

Multi *sēquā, fūgērē, occīdī, cāpī*.

3. Obliquē, cum Accūsātivō Subjectī. § 94.

4. Prōlātā constructiōnē Verbī vĕl Adjectivī :

Sōlent diū *cōgītārē* quī magnā vōlunt *gērērē*.  
Patriāe dīcēris *essē* pāter.  
Lūdum insolentem *lūdērē* pertīnax.

§ 141. II. Infinitivī Cāsūs sunt Gērundiā ēt Sūpīnā.

1. Accūsātivūs Gērundiī Praepōsitōnībūs adjungitūr :

Ad bēnē *vīvendum* brēvē tempūs sātīs est.

2. Gēnitivūs Gērundiī Substantivīs ēt Adjectivīs additūr :

Ars *scrībendī* discitūr. | Cūpidūs *audiendī* est.

3. Dātivūs Gērundiī Nōminībūs et Verbīs additūr :

Pār est *dissērendō*. | Dāt ōpēram *lēgendō*.

4. Ablātivūs Gērundiī causae vĕl mōdī est aut Praepōsitōnī junctūs :

*Fūgīendō* vincimūs. | *Dē pugnandō* dēlibērant.

5. Sūpīnum īn *um* Accūsātivūs est post Verbā mōtūs :

*Lūsum* it Maecēnās, *dormitum* ēgō.

a. *Irī* cum Sūpīnō efficit Infinitivum Fūtūrī Passivī :

Audiērāt nōn *dātum irī* filio uxōrem sūō.

6. Sūpīnum īn *ū* prō Ablātivō Respectūs est :

Foedum *dictū* est. | Nēfās *vīsū* est.

§ 142. III. Infinitivum, cum Gērundiō, Participiūs, ēt Sūpīnō īn *um*, ēōsdem cāsūs rēgit ac Verbum Finitum :

Cūpiō sātisfācērē *rēipublicae*.  
Cūpidūs sum sātisfāciēndī *rēipublicae*.  
Ausi omnēs immānē *nēfās ausōquē* pōtītī.  
Ast ēgō nōn Graiūs servitum *mātrībūs* ībō.

§ 143. În Gërandiis Transîtivis ūsîtatiör est Attractiö Gërandivă; cūjūs constructiönis rëgülä est haecce :

Trăhitür Objectum în Gërandii cāsum, Gërandium în nūmërum ët gënūs Objecti :

Brütüs în *libërandā patriā* est interfectüs.  
Hi septemvirī fūerunt *āgrīs dividendīs*.

§ 144. IV. 1. Necessitātem signifiçat Gërandivă constructiö impersonālis, în Verbis pötissimum intransîtivis :

*Bibendum est.* | *Ëundum ërit.*

a. Huic addi pötest Dätivüs, rāriūs Ablätivüs cum *ā, ab* :

*Bibendum est nobīs.* | *Vöbīs ëundum ërit.*

b. Ët sī quis āliūs cāsūs ā Verbö rëgitür :

*Civibūs est ā vöbīs consülendum.*  
*Süo cuiquë jüdicio est ütendum.*  
*Eudoxüs öpinätür Chaldaeis minimë essë crëdendum.*

2. Necessitātem signifiçat attribütivă constructiö Gërandivī, în Verbis transîtivis :

*Dëüs ët diligendus est nobīs ët timendus.*  
*Nön tangendä rätës transiliunt vadä.*

## DE PRONOMINIBUS.

§ 145. *Së, süüs*, Rëflexivă Prönömină, rëfëruntür äd sententiæ principālis Subjectum, mödö tertiae persönae sît :

Sentit ānimüs *së* vī *süä* mövëri.

a. Rëflexivă äd Objectum rëferrī possunt, sī ëä rëlatiö nihil häbët ambigüi :

*Scipionem impellit ostentatiö süi.*  
*Apibūs fructum restitüo süum.*  
*Mors süä quemquë mänet.*

## DE PARTICULIS NONNULLIS.

§ 146. Multae Conjunctiönës similia similibüs annectunt :

*Mirätur portäs strëpitudinë et strätä viärum.*  
*Virtüs nec ëripi nec surripī pötest.*  
*Nëminem säpientiörem pütö quam Söcrätëm.*  
*Omne solum forti patriä est, ut piscibüs aequor.*

§ 147. *Nē* prōhibītīvā cum Impērātīvō Mōdō vėl cum Con-  
junctīvō ūsurpātūr: *nēdum, ūtinam, Ō sī, ūt* prō ūtinam,  
cum Conjunctīvō:

*Nē* quā mēis estō dictīs mōrā.  
*Nē* culpam in mē contūlērīs.  
*Neu* dēsint ēpūlis rōsae.

Mortālīā factā pērībunt,  
*Nēdum* sermōnum stēt hōnōs et grātīā vivax.  
*Ūtinam* mīnūs vītāe cūpīdī fūissēmūs.  
*Ō si* urnam argentī fors quae mīhī monstrēt.  
*Ūt* illum dī dēaequē perdant.

## COMPENDIUM REGULARUM DE SUBJUNCTIVO.

§ 148. Mōdūs Conjunctīvūs vārīis sensībūs *pūrē* ūsur-  
pātūr: quum *subjungitūr* altērī Verbō, Subjunctīvūs appel-  
lātūr.

§ 149. Prōnōmīnā ēt Partīcūlae, quae obliquē interrōgant,  
Subjunctīvum postūlant:

Ipsē quis *sīt*, ūtrum *sīt*, an nōn *sīt*, id quōquē nescit.

Tālīā sunt:

*Quantūs, ūter, quālis, quis, quot, quōtūs, unde, ūbī, quāndō,*  
*Cūr, quōtīēs, quārē, quam, quōmōdō, num, nē, ūt, an, ūtrum.*

§ 150. Rēlātīvum *quī*, cum Partīcūlis sūis, *undē, ūbī,*  
cētēris, simplici sensū cāpit Indicātīvum: sī continētūr in eō  
*quum, quamvis, ūt, vėl tālis ūt*, Subjunctīvum:

Mīsērēt tūi mē, quī hunc *fācias* inimicū tībī.  
Littēras mīsi quībūs ēt *plācārem* eūm ēt *mōnērem*.  
Quīs est quī nōn *ōdērīt* prōtervam pūērītūam?  
Dignā rēs est ūbī nervōs *intendās*.

§ 151. Rēlātīvum vėl Conjunctiō, sī sūbordinātūr ōrātīōnī  
obliquae vėl rē vėl pōtestātē, Subjunctīvum postūlat:

Ennīūs nōn censēt lūgendam essē mortem, quam im-  
mortālītās *consēquātūr*.

Sōcrātēs accūsātūs est quōd *corrumpērēt* iūventūtem.

a. Conjunctīvō saepē sūbordinātūr Subjunctīvūs:

Clāmant omnēs: praestārēt quōd *rēcēpissēt*.



§ 152. Coniunctiōnum Mōdōs rēgentium Classēs sunt trēs.

I. Prīmā Classis est ěarum, quārum prōprius est Subiunctivus :

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>(1) CONSECUTIVA :<br/>Ůt (<i>so that</i>)</p> <p>(2) FINALES :<br/>Ůt (<i>in order that</i>)<br/>Nē (<i>lest, that . . . not</i>)<br/>Quō (<i>in order that</i>)<br/>Quōminūs (<i>but that</i>)<br/>Quin (<i>but that</i>)</p> <p>(3) CAUSALIS :<br/>Quum (<i>since</i>)</p> | <p>(4) CONDITIONALES :<br/>Dum<br/>Mōdō<br/>Dummōdō } (<i>provided that</i>)</p> <p>(5) CONCESSIVAE :<br/>Licēt<br/>Quamvis } (<i>although</i>)<br/>Ůt</p> <p>(6) COMPARATIVAE :<br/>Tanquam<br/>Vēlūt, ceu } (<i>as if</i>)<br/>Quāsi, &amp;c.</p> |
|---|---|

II. Altĕrā Classis est ěarum quārum prōprius est Indicativus, nisi subordinentur oratiōni obliquae vĕl rē vĕl pōtestatē :

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>(1) CAUSALES :<br/>Quōd, quā (<i>because</i>)<br/>Quōniam (<i>since</i>)<br/>Quandōquidem (<i>since</i>)<br/>Siquidem (<i>inasmuch as</i>)</p> <p>(2) TEMPORALES :<br/>Quandō, quum, ůbī (<i>when</i>)<br/>Ůt (<i>when, since</i>)<br/>Quōtiēs (<i>as often as</i>)</p> | <p>Sīmūl (<i>as soon as</i>)<br/>Post-quam (<i>after that</i>)<br/>Dum<br/>Dōnēc } (<i>whilst, as long as</i>)<br/>Quōād</p> <p>(3) CONCESSIVAE :<br/>Quamquam (<i>although, however</i>)<br/>Ůtūt (<i>however</i>)</p> |
|--|---|

III. Tertiā Classis est ěarum, quās aut Indicativus sēquitur aut Subiunctivus, prōut rēs aut vĕrā aut cōgitatā prōpōnitur.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>(1) TEMPORALES :<br/>Dum, dōnēc, quōād (<i>until</i>)<br/>Antē-quam } (<i>before that</i>)<br/>Prius-quam }</p> | <p>(2) CONDITIONALES ET CONCESSIVAE :<br/>Sī (<i>if</i>)<br/>Nīsī (<i>unless</i>)<br/>Etsī, ĕtīamsī, (<i>although, even if</i>)</p> |
|--|---|

§ 153. Īdīōtismī sunt Lātīnī sĕrmōnis :

(1) Quum (*when*) sēquentē Subiunctivō Imperfectī vĕl Plūperfectī :

Zēnōnem, quum Āthēnīs essem, audiēbam frēquentēr.  
Decessit Agēsīlāus quum in portum vēnissēt.

(2) Dum (*whilst*) sěquentě Indicātīvō Praesentis, ětiam in obliquā sūbordinātīōně ět dē rē praetērītā :

Quem ardōrem stūdiī censētis fūissē in Archimēdē, quī,  
*dum* in pulvērē quaedam *dēscribīt* attentīūs, nē patriam  
 quidem captam essē sensērīt?

§ 154. Conjunctiō excidit āliquandō :

Philōsōphiae serviās oportēt (supplē *ūt*).

Quaeram justum sit necnē pōema (supplē *ūtrum*).

Partem ōpēre in tantō, sinēret dōlōr, Icāre, hābērēs (supplē *sī*).

§ 155. Dē Consēcūtīōně Tempōrum ęā est rēgūlā, ūt Prīmāriā Prīmāriīs sūbordinentūr, Histōricā Histōricīs.

Exemplā ex Syntaxī rēpētantūr.

#### REGULAE SUBSIDIARIAE DE CONGRUENTIA.

§ 156. (1) Adjectivā prō Substantivīs pōnuntūr :

*Multā paupērī dēsunt, āvārō omnīā.*

(2) Infinitivā prō Substantivīs pōnuntūr :

*Vivērē est vālērē.*

(3) Clausulae prō Substantivīs pōnuntūr :

*Crēdibilē est omnīā consilīō fierī.*

§ 157. Impersōnālis Verbī Nōminātīvūs nōn exstāt, nisi sī Infinitivum vėl Clausulā est :

*Pūdēt ęum factī (i.e. pūdōr pūdēt).*

*Quid āgītūr? Stātūr (i.e. stātīō fīt).*

*Taedēt ęādem audirē millīēs.*

*Magnī intērest ūt tē vidēam.*

§ 158. Vox intelligitūr ōmissā pēr Ellipsin :

*Nihil bōnum nisi quōd hōnestum (bis intelligē est).*

*Perfundor gēlidā (intelligē āquā).*

§ 159. Congrūentiā vāriātūr pēr Attractiōnem :

*Nōn omnis error stultitiā est dīcendā.*

*Thēbae, quod Boeōtiae cāpūt est.*

§ 160. Congrūentiā cum sensū fīt pēr Sŷnēsīn, praesertim āpūd pōētās :

*Sūbēunt Tęgęaeā jūventūs . . . auxiliō tardī.*

*Ubi est is scēlūs, quī mē perdīdit?*

## PROSODIAE COMPENDIUM.

§ 161. Dē Syllābārum Quantitatē dissērit,  
Et dē Mētrōrum lēgibus, Prōsōdia.



## DE SYLLABARUM QUANTITATE.

## REGULAE QUANTITATIS GENERALES.

- § 162. 1. Omnis Diphthongus contractāquē Syllābā longa est.  
2. Dant Dērīvātīs prōpriūm Prīmāriā tempus.  
3. Praevīā vōcālī vōcālis corrīpiētur.  
4. Vōcālis fit longā sītū, cui consōnā substat  
    Altērā post ūnam; ut *trīstīs*: seu vōcē in eādē  
    *J* sūbit, *x*, aut *z*; sic *Ājāx*, *āxīs*, *Āmāzōn*.  
    *a.* Vōcālis dūbīa est, quamvīs brēvis ipsā sūā vī,  
    Quam sēquitur, liquidā subjunctā, consōnā mūta:  
    Sic rectē *lūgūbrē* mēlos vel *lūgūbrē* dicēs.  
    *b.* *N* post *g* longam dat semp̄r: ūt *āgnūs* ēt *īgnīs*.  
    Nec minūs *m* post *g*; *tēgmen* quōd monstrāt ēt *āgmen*.

## DE QUANTITATE SYLLABARUM FINALIUM.

- § 163. 1. Plērāquē prōdūcēs Mōnōsyllābā, quālīā *mē*, *vēr*.  
2. Prōdūcuntūr in *A*; *frustrā*, *contrāquē*, *pārāque*.  
    *a.* Accūsātīvōs et cāsūs excīpē Rectōs:  
    *Carmīnā Mūsā* cānit; rēsōnant *Āmāryllidā* silvae.  
3. *E* brēvis in fine est: sic *lēgē*, *tīmētē*, *cārērē*.  
4. Prōdūcuntūr in *I*: *dīcī*, *plēbīque*, *dōlīque*.  
5. Prōdūcuntūr in *O*: *virgō*, *multōquē*, *juvōque*.  
6. Prōdūcuntūr in *Ū*: sic *tū*, *dictūquē*, *dūūque*.  
7. *Y* brēvis in fine est: sic dant *chēlīj*, *Tīphīj*, pōetae.  
8. In *C* prōdūcuntūr, ūt *illīc* (excīpē *donēc*).  
9. Corrīpē in *L*, *D*, *T*: sic *Hannībāl*, *illūd*, *āmāvīt*.  
10. *N* brēvis in fine est: sunt testēs *Īlīōn*, *āgmēn*.

11. *R* brēvis in fine est : ceu *calcār, āmābītūr, Hectōr.*
12. Prōdūcuntūr in *Ās* : ut *terrās* atquē *Mēnalcās.*
13. Prōdūcuntūr in *Ēs*, ut *sēdēs* atquē *vidērēs.*
14. *Is* brēvis in fine est : ceu *dīcērīs, ūtilīs, ensīs.*
- a. Oblīquī cāsūs plūrālēs excipiuntur,  
 Ut *terrīs, vobīs* ; etiā persōnā sēcunda  
 In primō nūmērō Quartae Praesentīs, ūt *audīs* :  
 Compōsita ā *vīs, sīs* : *mātīs, notīsque, vēlīsque.*
15. Prōdūcuntūr in *Ōs* : ut *ventōs* atquē *sācerdōs.*
16. *Us* brēvis in fine est : testēs *ōlūs, intūs, āmāmūs.*
- a. Hinc Quartae cāsūs contractōs excipe, ūt *artūs* :  
 Et queis crescentis longa est pēnultimā cāsūs,  
 Ut *tellūs incūsque, jūventūs* atquē *sēncctūs.*
17. *Ys* brēvis in fine est : testēs *chēlīs, Ōthryīs, Ěrīnīs.*
- Obs. Mōs rēgīt Auctōrum tempus, sī rēgūlā dēfit.

## DE METRORUM LEGIBUS.

### DEFINITIONES.

- § 164. Syllābā longā brēvī subjectā vocātūr *Īambus* . . . ∪ -  
 Quod sī longā brēvī praecesserit, illē *Trōchēus* . . - ∪  
*Spondēus* binīs fertur consistērē longīs . . . . . - -  
*Dactylūs* efficitur longā brēvibusque dūābus . . - ∪ ∪

### DE SCANSIONE ET FIGURIS SCANSIONIS.

- § 165. 1. Scansio, | quam vāri|ā con|cinnant | artē Fī|gūrae,  
 Distribū|it Ver|sum | prō rāti|ōnē Pē|dum.
2. A. Vōcālem ēlidet Sŷnāloepha in limītē vōcis,  
 Sī Vōcālīs ērit subnexae in limīnē vōcis ;  
 ‘*Phyllid’ ām’ | ant’ ālī|ās.*  
 (prō *Phyllidā, āmō, antē.*)
3. B. Ecthlipsis Vōcālem atquē *m* dē limītē trūdet,  
 Sī Vōcālīs ērit subnexae in limīnē vōcis ;  
 ‘*Ō cū|rās hōmīn’ | Ō quant’ | est in | rēbūs in|āne.*  
 (prō *hōmīnum, quantum.*)
- a. Extrēma in dūbīis censētur syllābā versūs.

## § 166. VERSUS MEMORIALES DE VOCUM DIFFERENTIA.

- I. In silūis *ācēr* est : *ēquūs ācēr* Ōlympiā vincit.  
*Vōcē cānēs* ; *dūc ējā cānēs*, nīsi tempōrā *cānēs*.  
*Clāvā fērit* : *clāvus* firmat ; *clāvis*que rēclūdit.  
 Ut *plācēās cōmitti*, *mōrēs cōmēs* indūē *cōmēs*.  
*Cōmoedī scēnam*, *cōmēdōnēs* quaeritē *cēnam*.  
*Consūlē doctōrēs* ; sic tū *tibi consūlis* ipsī.  
 Bellandī *cūpīdō* nōcūit sūā saepē *cūpīdō*.  
 Carmīnā *dīcuntur*, Dōmīnō dum templā *dīcantur*.  
 Solvērē *dīffīdit*, nōdum quī *dīffīdit* enſe.  
 Uxōrem *dūcit* vir ; *nūbit* sponsā mārītō.  
*Ēdūcāt* hic cātūlōs, ut mox *ēdūcāt* in āprōs.  
 Sī tibi non est *aes*, *ēs* inops, et pinguā nōn *ēs*.  
 Fallit saepē *frētum* plācīdō nīmīs aequōrē *frētum*.  
 Sōl nūbēs *fūgāt*, et *fūgīt* irrēpārābilē tempus.  
 Per quod quis peccat, pēr *īdem* mox plectītūr *īdem*.  
 Difficīlis *lābōr* est, cūjus sub pondērē *lābor*.  
 Frons pūeri est *lēvis*, *lēvis* autem linguā pūellae.  
 In campīs *lēpōrēs*, in librīs quaerē *lēpōrēs*.  
 Nōn *licēt* assē *mīhi*, quī *mē* nōn assē *licētur*.  
 Mālo ēgō *mālā* mēā bōnā quam *mālā* frangērē *mālā*.  
 Merx *vēnit*, mercesquē *vēnit* quaesitā *lābōre*.  
 Mulcēt āmans plācīdam, dum *mulget*, Silvīā vaccam.  
 Fēcērīs officīum, *mīsērīs* sī *mīsērīs* aera.  
 Nītērē, parvē pūer, cūpiēs quīcumquē *nītēre*.  
 Oblītā quae fūcō rūbēt, est *oblītā* dēcōrī.  
 Occīdit illē dōlō turpī, quem *occīdit* āmīcus.  
 Ōs (*ōris*) mandat, sēd *ōs* (*ossis*) mandītūr *ōre*.  
 Uxōris *pārēre* et *pārērē*, *pārārē* mārītī est.  
 Pārentēs pūerī faciunt gaudērē *pārentēs*.  
 Lūdē *pīlā* : *pīlum* torquētur : *pīlā* cōlumna est.  
 Prō rēti et rēgīōnē *plāga* est ; prō verbērē *plāga*.  
 Sunt cīvēs urbis *pōpūlus* ; sed *pōpūlus* arbor.  
 Prōrā prior, *puppīs* pars postēra, āt imā *cārīna*.  
 Spondet *vas* (*vādīs*), at *vās* (*vāsīs*) contīnēt escam.  
 Vās cāpūt, at nummōs tantum *praes* praestāt āmīcē.  
 Sī cītūs irē *vēlīs*, *vēlīs* ōpūs omnībūs ūti est.



- II. *Fidē*, sēd antē *vidē* : quī *fīdit*, nec hēnē *vidit*,  
 Fallitūr : ipsē *vidē* nē cāpiārē *fīdē*.  
*Consortēs* fortūna ēādem, *sōciōs* lābōr īdem,  
 Ūnum *collēgās* efficit officiūm :  
 At cārōs faciunt schōlā, lūdus, mensā, *sōdālēs* ;  
 Sulcūs āgrī *līra* est : dat *līrā* tactā mōdōs.  
 Nē sit *sēcūrus*, quī nōn est *tūtūs* āb hoste ;  
 Ad flūmen *rīpās*, ad mārē *litūs* hābēs.  
 Sunt aetātē *sēnēs* ; *vētērēs* vixērē priōrēs :  
 Quod nōn est *sīmūlō dissīmūlō*quē quōd est.  
 Annē *nōvī* quīd hābēs ? Ālium pētē : nil ēgō *nōvī*.  
 Quod mīnimē *rēfert* garrūlūs illē *rēfert*.  
 Sī quā fortē *sēdēs*, atque est tībī commōdā *sēdēs*,  
 Illā *sēdē sēdē* ; nec mīhī *cēdē* lōcō.

## (ENGLISH OF NOUNS, § 25—30.)

[§ 25.] (1) *Silver, gold, iron, plebeian-order, justice, spring, time, death, blood, childhood.* (2) *Ghosts, purse, household-gods, riches, cradle, trifles, thanks, arms, functions, huts, feast of Flora.*

[§ 26.] (5) *Artificer, worker, guest, seer, new-comer, witness, citizen, inhabitant, parent, priest (or priestess), guardian, avenger, young man (or woman), infant, informer, judge, heir, companion, guide, chief, burgess, husband (or wife), hostage, bird, interpreter, author, exile, ox (or cow), deer, mole, tiger, crane, dog, snake, serpent, swine.*

[§ 28.] *Paunch, bear-constellation, canvas, distaff, ground, vine-leaf, winnowing-fan, pear-tree, sapphire, sea, poison, common-folk.*

[§ 29.] I. (1) *Spade, order, pirate, hinge, margin.* (2) *Weevil, bat, poniard, staff, butterfly, ternion, sice.* (3) *Echo, flesh.* (4) *Tree, surface (or sea), marble (or sea), heart.* (5) *Whetstone, dowry.* (6) *Osier, maple, stripe, spring, truffle, teat (or fertility), carcass, pepper, journey, poppy.* (7) *Fetter, mat, reward, sheaf, rest, crop, copper.* II. (1) *River, axle, stalk, hill, hind-leg, hair, bundle, bellows, bludgeon, fire, circle (or world), sword, bread, fish, doorpost, month, brand, talon, canal, lever, worm, birthday, stone, blood, cucumber, dust, nets, ghosts, dormouse.* (2) *Path, thorn, rope, end, collar, cinder.* (3) *Adamant, elephant, male, giant, as, bail, vessel.* (4) *Shears, law, death, furniture, pumice, tile, bolt, basalt, sorrel.* (5) *Arch, phoenix, cup.* (6) *Fountain, mountain, iron, dropsy, griffin, bridge, cable, torrent, tooth, client, one-third-part, trident, west, east.* (7) *Boar-pig, scimitar.* III. (1) *Bran, turtle-dove, vulture, thief.* (2) *Slavery, youth, virtue, safety, old-age, land, anvil, marsh.* (3) *Beast.* (4) *Hare, mouse.* (5) *Mullet, consul, salt, sun, boxer.* (6) *Kidney, spleen, comb, dolphin, woodcock.* (7) *Gorgon, linen, kingfisher.*

[§ 30.] *Tribe, needle, porch, house, daughter-in-law, mother-in-law, old-woman, Ides, hand.*

## FIRST MEMORIAL SYNTAX.

## ON AGREEMENT.

## THE FOUR GENERAL RULES.

[§ 88.] I. A Verb Finite agrees with the Nominative of its Subject in Number and Person :

Māgīstēr dōcēt.  
*The master teaches.*

Lībrī lēguntūr.  
*Books are read.*

Tū dōcēs : nōs discimūs.  
*Thou teachest : we learn.*

Discērē est ūtilē.  
*To learn is useful.*

[§ 89.] II. An Adjective agrees in Gender, Number, and Case with that to which it is in attribution :

Vīr bōnūs illē bōnam hanc uxōrem hābēt.  
*That good man has this good wife.*

Hīrundō pullīs sūis orbātā quērītūr.  
*The swallow bereft of its young complains.*

Cārī sunt pārentēs ; cārā est pātriā.  
*Dear are parents, dear is country.*

Pūērī discendō fiunt doctī.  
*Boys by learning become learned.*

[§ 90.] III. A Substantive agrees in Case with that to which it is in apposition :

Nōs pūērī pātrēm Lollīum imitābimūr.  
*We boys will imitate our father Lollius.*

Effōdiuntūr ōpēs, irrītāmentā mālōrum.  
*Riches are dug out, incentives of evil.*

Spēs est expectātiō bōnī.  
*Hope is the expectation of good.*

Syllābā longā brēvī subjectā vōcātūr Īmbus.  
*A long syllable following a short is called Iambus.*

[§ 91.] IV. A Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person; but in Case belongs to its own clause:

Děum vĕnĕrāmŭr quĭ nōs creāvĭt.

*We worship God, who created us.*

Āmĭcŭs est, quem āmāmŭs, ā quō āmāmŭr.

*A friend is one whom we love, by whom we are loved.*

Āmō tĕ, mātĕr, quae mĕ āmās.

*I love you, mother, who love me.*

#### ON THE COMPOSITE SUBJECT.

[§ 92.] With a Composite Subject Plural words agree:

Vĕnĕnō absumptī sunt Hannĭbāl ět Phĭlōpoemĕn.

*Hannibal and Philopomen were cut off by poison.*

1. If the Persons differ, Verbs agree with the Prior Person:\*

Sĭ tŭ ět Tullĭā vālĕtĭs, ěgō ět Cĭcĕrō vālĕmŭs.

*If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well.*

2. When the Genders differ, Adjectives agree with the Masculine rather than with the Feminine:

Pātĕr mĭhĭ ět mātĕr mortŭī sunt.

*My father and mother are dead.*

a. If the things are lifeless, the Attributes are often Neuter:

Dĭvĭtĭae, dĕcŭs, glōrĭā ĩn ōcŭlĭs sĭtā sunt.

*Riches, honour, glory, are placed before our eyes.*

#### ON CASES.

##### ON THE CASES OF SUBJECT AND COMPLEMENT.

[§ 93.] (1) The Subject of a Finite Verb is a Nominative:

Annĭ fŭgĭunt.

*Years flee.*

(2) The Complement of a Finite Verb is generally a Nominative:

Vĭtā est somnĭum.

*Life is a dream.*

Nĕmō nascĭtŭr sĕpiens.

*Nobody is born wise.*

[§ 94.] (1.) The Subject of an Infinitive is put in the Accusative:

Constāt annōs fŭgĕrĕ.

*It is agreed that years flee.*

Sĕimŭs annōs fŭgĕrĕ.

*We know that years flee.*

\* The First Person is considered Prior to the Second, the Second to the Third.

(2) The Complement of an Infinitive is generally put in the Accusative :

Aiunt vītam essē somnīum.  
They say that life is a dream.

Constāt nēmīnem nascī sǎpīentem.  
It is agreed that nobody is born wise.

a. The Construction of Accusative with Infinitive is called Oblique (Indirect) Statement.

### ON THE ACCUSATIVE.

[§ 95.] The Accusative is the Case of the Nearer Object. It has also the power of limiting.

#### I. THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE OBJECT.

[§ 96.] Transitive Verbs govern an Accusative of the Object :

Mātēr ālit pullōs.  
The mother nourishes the young ones.

In primīs vĕnĕrārĕ Dĕum.  
In the first place worship God.

[§ 97.] Intransitive Verbs take an Accusative of kindred meaning :

Dūram servīt servītūtem.		Claudīūs ālēam lūsīt.
He serves a hard slavery.		Claudius played hazard.

[§ 98.] Some Verbs, especially those of asking and teaching, admit two Accusatives, one of the Thing, the other of the Person :

Nunquam dīvītīās dĕōs rōgāvī.  
Never asked I of the gods riches.

Quīd nunc tĕ littĕrās dōcĕam?  
Why now should I teach you letters?

[§ 99.] Factitive Verbs, that is, of making, calling, thinking, and the like, have two Accusatives, one of the Object, the other of the Complement :

Tĕ fācīmus, Fortūnā, dĕam.  
We make thee, Fortune, a goddess.

Rōmūlūs urbem sūam Rōmam vōcāvīt.  
Romulus called his city Rome.

## II. THE ACCUSATIVE OF LIMITATION.

[§ 100.] The Accusative of Respect is joined to Verbs and Adjectives, especially in poetry :

Trēmīt <i>artūs.</i>		Nūdae sunt <i>lācertōs.</i>
<i>He trembles in his limbs.</i>		<i>They are bare as to the arms.</i>

[§ 101.] The Place, *Whither* one goes, is put in the Accusative ; and without a Preposition, if it is either the name of a town, or *dōmūs* (*home*), *rūs* (*country*) :

Rēgūlūs *Carthāgīnem* rēdīit.  
*Regulus returned to Carthage.*  
 Vōs itē *dōmum* : ēgō *rūs* ībō.  
*Go ye home : I will go into the country.*

[§ 102.] (1) The Duration of Time is put in the Accusative :

Pēriclēs *quādrāgintā annōs* praefūit *Āthēnīs.*  
*Pericles led Athens forty years.*

(2) The Measure of Space is put in the Accusative :

Ērant mūrī *Bābylōnīs dūcēnōs pēdēs* altī.  
*The walls of Babylon were two hundred feet high.*

[§ 103.] Many Prepositions govern an Accusative Case (see the list, § 83).

## ON THE DATIVE.

[§ 104.] The Dative is the Case of the Recipient or Remoter Object.

§ 105. Words which throw their action over to the Remoter Object are called *Trajective*, and include many Adjectives, Adverbs, and Verbs, more rarely Substantives, by which is implied (1) Nearness or (2) Demonstration, (3) Gratification or (4) Dominion ; and any notion contrary to these.

§ 106. I. *Trajective* Words take a Dative when the meanings implied are

(1) Nearness and its contraries :

Est finītimūs *ōrātōrī* pōētā.  
*A poet is near akin to an orator.*

Nīl fūit unquam sic impār *sībī.*  
*Nothing was ever so unequal to itself.*

Congrūentēr *nātūrae* vīvendum est.  
*We should live agreeably to nature.*



Praesentiā confēr praetērītīs.

*Compare present things with past.*

Nec tāmēn ignōrat quid distent aerā lūpīnis.

*And yet he is not ignorant how coins differ from lupins.*

(2) Demonstration and its contraries :

Dīc mīhī, Dāmoetā, cūjum pēcūs?

*Tell me, Damoetas, whose flock (is this)?*

Anguis Sullae appārūit immōlantī.

*A snake appeared to Sulla while sacrificing.*

Haud cuiquam in dūbiō ērāt bellum imminērē.

*It was not doubtful to any one that war was imminent.*

(3) Gratification and its contraries :

Pātrīae sīt idōnēūs, ūtīlīs āgrīs.

*Let him be serviceable to his country, useful to the lands.*

Turbā grāvis pācī plācīdaequē inīmīcā quīētī.

*A crowd oppressive to peace and unfriendly to calm rest.*

Quōd ālīī dōnāt sībī dētrāhīt.

*What he gives to another, he withdraws from himself.*

Lūcem reddē tūae, dux bōnē, pātrīae.

*Restore light to thy country, good chief.*

Nōbīs spondet fortunā sālūtem.

*Fortune guarantees safety to us.*

Nē libēāt tībī quod nēmīnī licēt.

*Let not (that) please thee which is lawful to no man.*

Parcē pīō gēnērī.

*Spare a pious race.*

Succensērē nēfās pātrīae.

*It is impious to be wroth with one's country.*

Rēsistendum est appētītībūs.

*We should resist our passions.*

(4) Dominion and its contraries :

Sāpiens, sībī qui impērīōsus.

*The wise man (is he) who (is) lord over himself.*

Omnībūs supplex est.

*He is suppliant to all.*

Impērāt aut servit collectā pēcūniā cuique.

*Amassed money sways or serves every man.*

Mundūs Dēō pārēt, et huīc ōbēdīunt mārīā terraequē.

*The universe obeys God, and seas and lands hearken to Him.*

a. Among Trajective words are many Verbs compounded with Particles, such as bēnē (*well*), mālē (*ill*), sātīs (*enough*),

rē, ād, antē, con, ĩn, intēr, dē, ōb, sūb, sūpēr, post, and prae :

*Cētērīs sātisfāciō sempēr, mīhī nunquam.*  
*I satisfy others always, myself never.*

*Sīcīliā quondam Ītāliāe ādhaesīt.*  
*Sicily once was attached to Italy.*

*Gīgantēs bellum dīs intūlērunt.*  
*The giants waged war on the gods.*

*Ānātum ōvā gallīnīs suppōnimūs.*  
*We place eggs of ducks under hens.*

§ 107. II. A Dative of the Recipient can be added anywhere with a certain notion of Advantage or Disadvantage.

*Esto, ut nunc multī, dīves tībī, paupēr āmicīs.*  
*Be, as many are now, rich for thyself, poor for friends.*

*Numā virgīnēs Vestae lēgīt.*  
*Numa chose virgins for Vesta.*

*Vēnūs nupsīt Vulcānō.*  
*Venus wedded Vulcan (lit. veiled herself for Vulcan).*

*Philōsōphīae sempēr vācō.*  
*I always am at leisure for philosophy.*

a. Refer here the Dative of the Pronoun, which is called the Ethic Dative :

*Quid mīhī Celsūs āgit?*  
*What (is) my Celsus doing?*

b. Sum with its compounds, except possum, takes a Dative :

*Sum tībī Mercūrius.*  
*I am to thee Mercury.*

*Vir mīhī sempēr ābest.*  
*My husband is always absent from me.*

c. Est, sunt, with a Dative, often imply having :

*Est hōmīnī cum Dēō sīmilitūdō.*  
*Man has a resemblance to God.*

*Sunt nōbīs mītiā pōma.*  
*We have mellow apples.*

d. The same Dative is joined to Participles and Participials of the Passive Voice, especially to Gerundives :

*Magnus cīvis ōbīt et formīdātūs Ōthōnī.*  
*A great citizen is dead, and one dreaded by Otho.*

*Multīs illē bōnīs flēbīlīs occīdit.*  
*He died a cause of weeping to many good men.*

*Lēgendae sunt pūcērīs Aesōpī fābūlae.*  
*The fables of Æsop are to be read by boys.*

§ 108. III. A Dative of the Thing is used as a Complement, a Dative of the Recipient being often added :

Nimīā fidūciā cālāmītātī sōlēt essē.  
*Too much confidence is wont to be a calamity.*

Exitio est āvidum mārē nauītis.  
*The greedy sea is a destruction to sailors.*

§ 109. IV. A Dative of the Complement is used by Attraction, especially in expressions of naming :

Licūt Thēmistōclī essē oītīōsō.  
*It was lawful for Themistocles to be at leisure.*

Huic ēgō dīēī nōmēn Trīnūmō faciām.  
*To this day I will give the name Trinumus.*

#### ON THE ABLATIVE.

[§ 110.] The Ablative is the Case of circumstances which attend action, and limit it adverbially. It defines also Time and Place.

[§ 111.] I. Ablative of Cause :

Ōdērunt peccārē bōnī virtūtīs āmōre.  
*The good hate to sin from love of virtue.*

Coeptīs immānībūs effērā Dīdō.  
*Dido wild with horrid purposes.*

[§ 112.] II. Ablative of the Instrument :

Hī jācūlīs, illī certant dēfendērē saxīs.  
*These strive to defend with javelins, those with stones.*

[§ 113.] III. Ablative of Manner :

Injūriā fit dūōbūs mōdīs, aut vī aut fraudē.  
*Wrong is done in two manners, either by force or by fraud.*

[§ 114.] IV. Ablative of Condition :

Pācē tūā cum Thāidē collōquār.  
*With your leave I will converse with Thais.*

Hōmō mēā sententiā prūdētissimūs est.  
*He is a man in my opinion very prudent.*

[§ 115.] V. Ablative of Quality, with Epithet :

Quā faciē fūit, cui dēdistī symbōlum?  
*Of what aspect was he to whom you gave the ticket?*

Sēnex prōmissā barbā, horrentī cāpillō.  
*An old man with long beard and rough hair.*

## [§ 116.] VI. Ablative of Respect :

Angör *ănĩmō*.*I am distressed in mind.*Ennĩus *ingēnĩō* maximũs, *artē* rũdis.*Ennius, mighty in genius, in art (is) rude.*

## [§ 117.] VII. Ablative of Price :

Ĕgō *spem* *prētiō* nōn ěmō.*I buy not hope at a cost.*Quōd nōn *ōpũs* est, *assē* cārum est.*What is not needful is dear at a penny.*

## [§ 118.] VIII. Ablative of Measure :

Longum *sesquĩpēdē*, *lātum* *pēdē* est.*It is a foot and a half long, a foot wide.*Sōl *multĩs* *partĩbũs* *mājōr* est quam *lūnā*.*The sun is many times larger than the moon.*Tantō *peſsimũs* omnĩum *pōētā*,*Quantō* tu *optimũs* omnĩum *pātrōnũs*.*By so much the worst poet of all,**As you (are) the best patron of all.*

## [§ 119.] IX. Ablative of Matter :

Cĩbũs *ěōrum* *lactē*, *cāſēō*, *carnē* *constāt*.*Their food consists of milk, cheese, and flesh.*

(a) These words govern an Ablative: (1) The Verbs *fungōr* (perform), *frũōr* (enjoy), *ũtōr* (use), *vescōr* (eat), *pōtĩōr* (get possession of), *dignōr* (deem worthy). (2) The Adjectives *dignũs* (worthy), *indignũs* (unworthy), *contentũs* (content), *frētũs* (relying), *praeditũs* (endued). (3) The Substantives *ōpũs* (need), *ũsũs* (use) :

(1) *Fungar* *vĩcē* *cōtĩs*.*I will perform the function of a whetstone.**Hannĩbāl, cum victōriā* *possēt* *ũtĩ*, *frũĩ* *mālũtĩ*.*Hannibal, when he might have used his victory, preferred to enjoy it.**Rex impiũs* *aurō* *vĩ* *pōtĩtur*. § 133.*The impious king gets possession of the gold by force.*(2) *Dignum* *laudē* *vĩrũm* *Mũsā* *vētāt* *mōrĩ*.*A man worthy of praise the Muse forbids to die.*(3) *Ŭbĩ* *rēs* *adsunt*, *quĩd* *ōpũs* *est* *verbĩs*?*When things are present, what need is there of words?**Ŭsũs* *est* *filĩō* *vĩgintĩ* *mĩnĩs*.*My son needs twenty minas.*

1. Most Adjectives and Verbs of *abounding* or *wanting*, *enriching* or *depriving*, take an Ablative; many also a Genitive:

Amor et mellē et fellē est fecundissimū.  
Love is very fruitful both in honey and gall.

Nunquam animū motū vacūus est.  
The mind is never void of motion.

Vis consili expers molē ruit suā.  
Force devoid of counsel falls by its own weight.

Mancipūs locuplēs egēt aeris Cappadocum rex.  
The king of the Cappadocians, rich in slaves, lacks coin.

Vacare culpā maximum est solatium.  
To be free from blame is a very great comfort.

§ [120.] X. The Ablative of Time answers the questions: *When? Within what time? How long before or after?*

Himē omniā bellā conquiescunt.  
In winter all wars rest.

Quidquid est biduo sciemus.  
Whatever there is we shall know in two days.

Homerus annis multis fuit ante Romulum.  
Homer was many years before Romulus.

§ [121.] XI. A. The Ablative of Place is put without a Preposition, when the question is, *By what road?*

Ibam fortē Viā Sacrā.  
I was going by chance on the Sacred Road.

B. The Ablative is often without a Preposition when the question is, *Where?* especially if it is the name of a town, or if it stands with an Epithet.

Philippus Neapoli est, Lentulus Puteolis.  
Philippus is at Naples, Lentulus at Puteoli.

Tabernae totā urbē clauduntur.  
The shops are closed in the whole city.

a. Singular names of towns of the first and second Declension define the place of station by cases in *ae, i*:

Quid Romae faciam?		Is habitat Mileti.
What can I do at Rome?		He dwells at Miletus.

b. Like these are *humī* (on the ground), *dōmī* (at home), *bellī*, *militiāe* (at the wars), *rūrī* (in the country):

Caesaris virtus domi militiāequē cognitā est.  
Caesar's virtue was known at home and at the wars.



C. The Ablative of a town is without a Preposition, when the question is, *Whence?*

Dēmārātūs fūgīt Cōrīnthō.  
*Demaratus fled from Corinth.*

a. So dōmō (*from home*), rūřě (*from the country*).

On the Accusative of Place *Whither*, see § 101.

§ [122.] XII. Various Prepositions govern an Ablative. (See the list, § 83).

a. Prepositions, even when compounded, govern an Ablative, especially *āb*, *dē*, *ex*:

Quīctiūs dictātūrā sē abdīcāvīt.  
*Quinctius resigned the dictatorship.*

Dētrūdunt nāvēs scōpūlō.  
*They thrust off the ships from the rock.*

b. The Ablative of the Agent takes the Preposition *ā*, *āb*:

Laudātūr āb hīs, culpātūr āb illīs.  
*He is praised by these, he is blamed by those.*

[§ 123.] XIII. The Ablative of Separation and Origin is joined also without a Preposition to Verbs and Participles:

Cēdēs cōemptīs saltībūs et dōmō.  
*You will retire from purchased glades and mansion.*

Pēlōpē nātūs, Tāntālō prognātūs est.  
*He was born of Pelops, descended from Tantalus.*

[§ 124.] XIV. Ablative of the Thing Compared:

(1) For *quam* (*than*) with Nominative:

Nihil est āmābiliūs virtūtē.  
*Nothing is more amiable than virtue.*

Vilīūs argentum est aurō, virtūtībūs aurum.  
*Silver is less valuable than gold, gold than virtues.*

(2) For *quam* with Accusative:

Pūtō mortem dēdēcōřě lēviōrem.  
*I think death easier than disgrace.*

Nēmīnem Ljčurgō ūtīliōrem Spartā gēnūt.  
*Sparta produced no man more serviceable than Lycurgus.*

[§ 125.] XV. A Substantive combines with a Participle in the Ablative which is called Absolute:

Rēgībūs exactīs consülēs crēātī sunt.  
*Kings having been driven out, consuls were elected.*

a. For the Participle is often supplied another Substantive, or an Adjective :

Nīl despērandum Teucrō dūce ēt auspīcē Teucrō.  
*There must be no despair with Teucer for leader, and Teucer for omen-giver.*

Nātūs est Augustūs consūlībūs Cīcērōnē et Antōniō.  
*Augustus was born when Cicero and Antonius were consuls.*

Janquē cīnis, vīvīs frātrībūs, Hectōr ērat.  
*And now Hector was ashes, his brothers being alive.*

Quīd dīcam, hāc jūventūtē?  
*What can I say, when our young men are of this stamp?*

## ON THE GENITIVE.

[§ 126.] The Genitive, the Case of the Proprietor, generally defines Nouns, either subjectively or objectively.

## A. THE SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE.

§ 127.] I. Genitive of the Author and Possessor :

Pōlyclētī signā plānē perfectā sunt.  
*Polycletus's statues are quite perfect.*

Singūlōrum ōpēs sunt dīvītiāe cīvītātīs.  
*The resources of individuals are the riches of the state.*

Omniā, quae mūlērīs fūērunt, vīrī fiunt.  
*All things, which were the woman's, become the husband's.*

Ēā stātūā dīcēbātūr essē Mýrōnīs.  
*That statue was said to be Myro's.*

a. Sometimes the Genitive depends on a word omitted.

Hectōrīs Andrōmāchē (supplē uxōr).  
*Hector's Andromache (supply wife).*

Ventum ērat ad Vestae (supplē templum).  
*We had come to Vesta's (supply temple).*

b. A Genitive so stands that nature, token, function, or duty, can be supplied.

Cūjusvis hōmīnīs est errārē.  
*It is in any man's nature to err.*

Est ādōlescentīs mājōrēs nātū vērērī.  
*The young man's duty is to reverence elders.*

Tempōrī cēdērē hābētūr sāpīentīs.  
*To yield to occasion is held a wise man's function.*

## [§ 128.] II. Genitive of Quality, with Epithet.

*Ingēnūi vultūs pūēr ingēnūiquē pūdōris.*

*A boy of high-bred countenance and high-bred modesty.*

*Claudīūs ērāt somnī brēvissimī.*

*Claudius was (a man) of very brief slumber.*

*a.* The Elliptic Genitives may be remarked: *parvī* (of small worth), *mīnōrīs* (of less value), *mīnimī* (of very little worth), *magnī* (of great price), *plūrīs* (of more value), *plūrimī*, (of high value), *tantī* (of so great price), *quantī* (of what price), *maximī* (of very great price), to which supply *prētīi*:

*Vōluptātem virtūs mīnimī fācīt.*

*Virtue makes pleasure of very small account.*

*Ēmīt hortōs tantī quantī Pŷthiūs vōlūt.*

*He bought the pleasure-ground at such price as Pythius wanted.*

[§ 129.] III. Intērest (*it imports*), rēfert (*it concerns*), admit a Genitive:

*Intērest omnium rectē fācērē.*

*It imports all men to act rightly.*

*Rēfert compōsitiōnis quae quibūs antēpōnās.*

*It concerns arrangement what things you place before what.*

*a.* The same Verbs instead of the Genitives of Pronouns use the Possessive Cases, *mēā*, *tūā*, *sūā*, *nostrā*, *vestrā*, *cūjā*, agreeing with *rē*:

*Ēt tūā ēt mēā intērest tē vālērē.*

*It imports both your weal and mine, that you be well.*

*Quīd nostrā īd rēfert?*

*What (does) that concern us?*

## [§ 130.] IV. A Genitive of the Thing Distributed is joined to Partitive words, which, as far as may be, take the Gender of the Genitive:

*Ēlēphantō bēlūārum est nullā prūdentiōr.*

*Of beasts, none is more sagacious than the elephant.*

*Hōmīnī ūnī ānīmantiūm luctūs est dātūs.*

*To man alone of animals sorrow has been given.*

*Sullā centum vīginti sūōrum āmīsīt.*

*Sulla lost a hundred and twenty of his men.*

*Mājor Nērōnum mox grāvē praeliūm commīsīt.*

*The elder of the Neros ere long fought a severe battle.*

*Gallōrum fortissimī sunt Belgae.*

*The Belgæ are bravest of the Gauls.*

Nēmō *mortalium* omnibus hōris sāpit.

*Of mortals nobody is wise at all hours.*

Piscium fēminae mājōrēs sunt quam mārēs.

*Of fishes the females (are) larger than the males.*

Sēquimur tē, sanctē dēōrum.

*We follow thee, holy one of gods.*

Hōc ād tē mīnimē omnium pertinēt.

*This belongs to thee least of all men.*

a. Nostrūm (*of us*), vestrūm (*of you*), follow Partitives :

Tē venīrē ūterquē nostrūm cūpīt.

*Each of us desires that you come.*

[§ 131.] V. A Genitive of the Thing Measured follows Words of Quantity and Neuter Adjectives :

Sātis *elōquentiāe, sapiētiāe* pārum est.

*He has enough eloquence, too little wisdom.*

Āliquīd pristīni rōbōris conservāt.

*He keeps something of his old strength.*

Quantum nūmōrum, tantum fidēi est.

*There is the same amount of credit as of money.*

## B. THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE.

[§ 132.] I. A Genitive is joined objectively to Substantives, Adjectives, or Participles, which have a certain transitive force, especially if they signify *skill, care, desire*, or whatever is contrary to these.

Insītus est mentī *cognitiōnis* amor.

*Love of knowledge is implanted in the mind.*

Difficilis est cūrā *rerum* āliēnārum.

*Hard is the care of other people's affairs.*

Tempūs ēdax *rerum* est.

*Time is consumer of things.*

Corpūs pātiens *inediāe* fūit.

*His body was capable of enduring inanition.*

Consciā mens *recti* est.

*The mind is conscious of rectitude.*

Impērītūs *morum* fūit.

*He was unskilled in manners.*

Āvidā est *pericūli* virtūs.

*Valour is greedy of danger.*

Animūs fūit *aliēni* appētens, *sui* prōfūsūs.

*His mind was desirous of another's (wealth), lavish of his own.*



*a.* Mēī, tūī, sūī, nostrī, vestrī, are put objectively; mēūs, tūūs, sūūs, nostēr, vestēr, subjectively:

Niciās tūā sūī mēmōriā dēlectātūr.

*Nicias is charmed with your recollection of him.*

(*a*) A Subjective Genitive understood in a Possessive Pronoun admits a Genitive agreeing with it:

Respublicā mēā unūūs ōpērā salvā ērāt.

*The state was saved by my single exertion.*

Āvēs fētūs ādultōs sūae ipsōrum fidūciae permittunt.

*Birds entrust grown nestlings to their own self-reliance.*

[§ 133.] II. A Genitive is joined to Verbs and Adjectives which signify *power* and *impotence*, *inculpation*, *innocence*, *condemnation*, *acquittal*, *memory* and *forgetfulness*:

(1) Rōmānī signōrum pōtītī sunt. § 119 *a.*  
*The Romans gained the standards.*

Īrā est impōtens sūī.

*Anger is incapable of self-restraint.*

(2) Frāternī est sanguīnis insons.  
*He is innocent of a brother's blood.*

Rēūs est injūrīārūm.

*He is arraigned of injurious acts.*

(3) Pētillīūs furtī absōlūtūs est.  
*Petillius was acquitted of theft.*

Condemnāmūs hāruspicēs stultītiāe.

*We condemn soothsayers (as guilty) of folly.*

(4) Rēs adversae admōnent nōs rēligiōnum.  
*Adversity reminds us of religious duties.*

Omnēs immēmōrem bēnēficiū ōdērunt.

*All men hate one unmindful of a kindness.*

*a.* Mēmīnī, rēmīniscōr, rēcōrdōr, (*I remember*), oblīviscōr (*I forget*), admit Genitive or Accusative:

Jūbet mortis tē mēmīnissē Dēus.

*God bids thee remember death.*

Dulcēs mōriens rēmīniscītūr Argōs.

*Dying he remembers sweet Argos.*

[§ 134.] III. Pīgēt (*it irks*), pūdēt (*it shames*), paenītēt (*it repents*), taedēt (*it disgusts*), and mīsērēt (*it moves pity*), Impersonal Verbs, take a Genitive with an Accusative:

Mīsērēt tē āliōrum: tūī nēc mīsērēt nēc pūdēt.

*Thou pitiest others, for thyself without pity or shame.*

Ēōs partim scēlērūm, partim ineptīārūm paenītēt.

*They repent, some of their crimes, others of their follies.*



[§ 135.] IV. *Misĕrĕřor*, *misĕrescō* (*I pity*), take a Genitive; *misĕrōr*, *commisĕrōr* (*I compassionate*), an Accusative :

*Arcădĭi*, *quaesō*, *misĕrescĭtĕ rĕgis*.

*Pity, I pray, the Arcadian king.*

*Sortem misĕrătŭr ĩnĭquam.*

*He compassates the unjust fate.*

[§ 136.] VI. The Genitive (is) freely used by poets. But *aegĕr ħnimĭ* (*sick at heart*), *ħnimĭ pendĕō* (*I waver in mind*), and the like, appear even in prose.

#### ON CASES OUT OF THE SENTENCE.

[§ 137.] The Vocative stands out of the Sentence either without an Interjection or with an Interjection :

*Ōrō tĕ, fĭli* (vĕl *O fĭli*).

*I pray thee, son (or, O son).*

[§ 138.] The Nominative and the Accusative are used in Exclamations either without an Interjection or with an Interjection :

(1) *Infandum!*  
*Unutterable!*

*Eccĕ nŏvĕ turbĕ!*  
*Lo, a new disturbance!*

(2) *Mĕ misĕrum!*  
*Wretched me!*

*Ĕn quattuŏr ħrĕs!*  
*Lo, four altars!*

[§ 139.] So the Dative is put with *hei* (*alas!*), *vae* (*woe!*).

*Hei misĕrō mĭhi!*  
*Alas wretched me!*

*Vae victĭs!*  
*Woe to the vanquished!*

#### ON THE VERB INFINITIVE.

[§ 140.] I. The Infinitive stands—

1. Substantively, for Nominative or Accusative :

(1) *Invidĕrĕ nŏn cĕdĭt ĩn sĕpĭentem.*  
*Envyng happens not to a wise man.*

*Dulce et dĕcŏrum est prŏ pĕtriĕ mŏri.*  
*Dying for country is sweet and comely.*

(2) *Mŏri nĕmŏ sĕpĭens misĕrum dixĕrit.*  
*No wise man will call it miserable to die.*

2. Predicatively, -in narration, for a Finite Verb :

*Multi sēquī, fūgērē, occīdī, cāpī.*

*Many were following, flying, being slain, being captured.*

3. Obliquely, with Accusative of the Subject. See § 94.

4. Carrying on the construction of a Verb or Adjective :

*Sōlent dīū cōgītārē quī magnā vōlunt gērērē.*

*They are wont to reflect long who wish to perform great things.*

*Pātriae dīcērīs essē pāter.*

*Thou art said to be father of thy country.*

*Lūdum insōlentem lūdērē pertīnax.*

*Persisting to play an insolent game.*

[§ 141.] II. Gerunds and Supines are the Cases of the Infinitive.

1. The Accusative of the Gerund is joined to Prepositions :

*Ad bēnē vīvendum brēvē tempūs sātīs est.*

*For living well a short time is sufficient.*

2. The Genitive of the Gerund is joined to Substantives and Adjectives :

*Ars scrībendī discītūr.*

*The art of writing is learnt.*

*Cūpīdūs audīendī est.*

*He is desirous of hearing.*

3. The Dative of the Gerund is joined to Nouns and Verbs :

*Pār est dissērendō.*

*He is competent for arguing.*

*Dāt ōpēram lēgendō.*

*He pays attention to reading.*

4. The Ablative of the Gerund is of cause or manner, or joined to a Preposition :

*Fūgīendō vincīmūs.*

*We conquer by flying.*

*Dē pugnantō dēlibērant.*

*They deliberate about fighting.*

5. The Supine in *um* is an Accusative after Verbs of motion :

*Lūsum it Maecēnās, dormītum ēgō.*

*Mæcenas goes to play, I to sleep.*

- a. *Īrī* with the Supine forms the Infinitive of the Future Passive :

*Audīerāt nōn dātum īrī filiō uxōrem sūō.*

*He had heard (that there was) no intention (non īrī) to give a wife to his son.*

6. The Supine in *u* is for an Ablative of Respect :

*Foedum dictū est.*

*It is horrible to state.*

*Nēfās vīsū est.*

*It is impious to view.*

[§ 142.] III. The Infinitive, with Gerund, Participles, and Supine in *um*, governs the same Cases as the Verb Finite :

Cūpiō sātisfācērē rēipublīcae.  
*I desire to satisfy the commonwealth.*

Cūpidūs sum sātisfāciendī rēipublīcae.  
*I am desirous of satisfying the commonwealth.*

Ausi omnēs immānē nēfās ausōquē pōtītī.  
*All dared monstrous impiety, and achieved their daring.*

Ast ēgō non Graiīs servitum mātrībūs ībō.  
*But I will not go to be a slave to Greek matrons.*

[§ 143.] In Transitive Gerunds the Gerundive Attraction is more usual; the rule for which construction is the following :

The Object is attracted to the Case of the Gerund, the Gerund to the Number and Gender of the Object :

Brūtūs īn lībērandā pātrīā est interfectūs.  
*Brutus was slain in freeing his country.*

Hī septemvīrī fūrunt āgrīs dīvidendīs.  
*These were the seven commissioners for dividing lands.*

[§ 144.] IV. 1. The Impersonal Gerundive construction implies necessity, principally in Intransitive Verbs :

Bibendum est.		Ĕundum ērit.
<i>One must drink.</i>		<i>One will (have) to go.</i>

a. To this may be joined a Dative, more rarely an Ablative with *ā*, *āb* :

Bibendum est nōbīs.		Vōbīs Ĕundum ērit.
<i>We must drink.</i>		<i>You will (have) to go.</i>

b. And whatever other Case is governed by the Verb :

Cīvībūs est ā vōbīs consūlendum.  
*You must consult for the citizens.*

Sūō cuiquē jūdīciō est ūtendum.  
*Each must use his own judgment.*

Eudoxūs ōpīnātūr Chaldaeīs mīnimē essē crēdendum.  
*Eudoxus thinks that astrologers should by no means be believed.*

2. The Attributive construction of the Gerundive implies necessity, in Transitive Verbs :

Dēūs ēt dīligendūs est nōbīs ēt tīmendūs.  
*God is both to be loved and feared by us.*

Nōn tangendā rātēs transīliunt vādā.  
*Barks o'erleap the shallows (which should) not be meddled with.*

## ON THE PRONOUN.

[§ 145.] *Sē, sūus*, Reflexive Pronouns, are referred to the Subject of the principal Sentence, provided it be of the third Person :

*Sentit ānimūs sē vī sūū mōvērī.*  
*The mind feels (that) it is moved by its own force.*

a. Reflexives can be referred to the Object, if that reference involves no ambiguity :

*Scīpiōnem impellit ostentātiō sūū.*  
*Ostentation of self sways Scipio.*

*Āpībūs fructum restitūō sūum.*  
*I restore to the bees their produce.*

*Mors sūū quemquē mānet.*  
*His death awaits every man.*

## ON SOME PARTICLES.

[§ 146.] Many Conjunctions annex like words to like :

*Mīrātur portās strēpītumque et strātā viārum.*  
*He marvels at the gates and the noise and the pavements of the streets.*

*Virtūs nec ēripī nec surripī pōtest.*  
*Virtue can neither be torn away nor stolen.*

*Nēmīnem sāpientiōrem pūtō quam Sōcrātem.*  
*I deem no man wiser than Socrates.*

*Omnē solum fortī patriā est, ut piscībūs aequor.*  
*Every soil is a country to the brave man, as the sea to fishes.*

[§ 147.] *Nē* prohibitive is used with an Imperative or Conjunctive Mood: *nēdum* (*not to say, much less*), *ūtīnam* (*O that*), *O sī, ūt* for *ūtīnam*, with a Conjunctive :

*Nē quā mēis estō dictīs mōrā.*  
*Let there be no delay to my orders.*

*Nē culpam in mē contūlērīs.*  
*Lay not the fault on me.*

*Neu dēsint ēpūlis rōsae.*  
*And (let) roses not be wanting to the feast.*

Mortālīā factā pēribunt,  
*Nēdum sermōnum stēt hōnōs et grātiā vivax.*  
*Mortal deeds will perish, much less (can) the honour and popularity of literary works stand permanent.*

Ūtinam mīnūs vītae cūpīdī fūissēmūs.  
*Would that we had been less fond of life.*

O sī urnam argentī fors quae mīhī monstrēt!  
*O if some chance would show me a pot of silver!*

Ūt illum dī dēaequē perdant.  
*I wish that the gods and goddesses may destroy him.*

OUTLINE OF RULES ON THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

[§ 148.] The Conjunctive Mood is used, purely, in various senses: but, if it is subjoined to another Verb, it is called Subjunctive.

[§ 149.] Pronouns and Particles, which interrogate obliquely, require a Subjunctive:

Ipsē quis sīt, ūtrum sīt, an nōn sīt, id quōquē nescit.  
*He knows not even this, who himself is, whether he is, or is not.*

Such Interrogatives are:

Quantūs ( <i>how great</i> )	Cūr ( <i>why</i> )
Ūtēr ( <i>which of two</i> )	Quōtīēs ( <i>how often</i> )
Quālis ( <i>of what sort</i> )	Quārē ( <i>wherefore</i> )
Quīs ( <i>who or what</i> )	Quam ( <i>how</i> )
Quōt ( <i>how many</i> )	Quōmōdō ( <i>how</i> )
Quōtūs ( <i>which, in order of number</i> )	Num, nē ( <i>whether</i> )
Undē ( <i>whence</i> )	Ūt ( <i>how</i> )
Ūbī ( <i>where or when</i> )	An, ūtrum ( <i>whether</i> ).
Quandō ( <i>when</i> )	

[§ 150.] The Relative quī, with its Particles, ūbī (*where, when, &c.*), undē (*whence*), and the rest, in its simple sense, takes an Indicative; if there is implied in it *since, although, in order that, or such that*, a Subjunctive:

Mīsērēt tūi mē, quī hunc fūciās inīmicum tībī.  
*I pity you, since you make this man your foe.*

Littēras mīsī quībūs ēt plācārem eūm ēt mōnērem.  
*I sent a letter wherewith I might pacify and admonish him.*

Quīs est quī nōn ōdērīt prōterram pūērītiām?  
*Who is there that hates not saucy boyhood?*

Dignā rēs est ūbī nervōs intendās.  
*The matter is worthy (that) you devote your energies to it.*



[§ 151.] A Relative or Conjunction, if it is subordinate to Oration actually or virtually oblique, requires a Subjunctive.

Ennius nōn censēt lūgendam essē mortem, quam immortalitās consēquātūr.

*Ennius considers that death (ought) not to be mourned, which immortality succeeds.*

Sōcratēs accusātūs est quōd corrumpērēt iuventūtem.

*Socrates was accused (on the charge) that he corrupted youth.*

a. To a Conjunctive Mood a Subjunctive is often subordinated.

Clāmant omnēs: praestārēt quōd rēcēpissēt.

*All cry out, he should perform what he had undertaken.*

[§ 152.] Of Conjunctions governing \* Moods there are three Classes:

I. The First Class consists of those Conjunctions, to which the Subjunctive is appropriate:

(1) CONSECUTIVE:

Ūt (*so that*)

(2) FINAL:

Ūt (*in order that*)

Nē (*lest, that . . . not*)

Quō (*in order that*)

Quōminūs (*but that*)

Quīn (*but that*)

(3) CAUSAL:

Quum (*since*)

(4) CONDITIONAL:

Dum

Mōdō

Dummōdō

} (*provided that*)

(5) CONCESSIVE:

Licēt

Quamvis

Ūt

} (*although*)

(6) COMPARATIVE:

Tanquam

Vēlūt, ceu

Quāsi, &c.

} (*as if*)

II. The Second Class consists of those Conjunctions, to which the Indicative is appropriate, unless they are subordinate to oration actually or virtually oblique.

(1) CAUSAL:

Quōd, quā (*because*)

Quōniam (*since*)

Quandōquidem (*since*)

Siquidem (*inasmuch as*)

(2) TEMPORAL:

Quandō, quum, ūbī (*when*)

Ūt (*when, since*)

Quōtīēs (*as often as*)

Sīmūl (*as soon as*)

Post-quam (*after that*)

Dum

Dōnēc } (*whilst, as long as*)

Quōād }

(3) CONCESSIVE:

Quamquam (*although, however*)

Ūtūt (*however*)

\* When we speak of Moods being governed by Conjunctions, we mean only that certain Conjunctions are used, always or in certain senses, with certain Moods. The

III. The Third Class consists of those Conjunctions which either the Indicative or the Subjunctive follows, according as the matter put forth is real or imagined.

## (1) TEMPORAL :

Dum, dōnēc, quōād (*until*)  
Antē-quam } (*before that*)  
Prius-quam }

## (2) CONDITIONAL AND CONCESSIVE :

Sī (*if*)  
Nisi (*unless*)  
Etsi, etiāmsi (*although, even if*)

a. [§ 153.] Idioms of the Latin language are :

(1) Quum (*when*) followed by a Subjunctive of the Imperfect or Pluperfect.

Zēnōnem, quum Āthēnīs essem, audiēbam frēquentēr.  
*I often used to hear Zeno, when I was at Athens.*

Dēcēssit Agēsīlāus quum in portum vēnissēt.  
*Agesilaus died, when he had come into harbour.*

(2) Dum (*whilst*), followed by an Indicative Present, even in oblique subordination, and concerning a past circumstance :

Quem ardōrem stūdiū censētis fūissē in Archimēdē, quī,  
*dum in pulvērē quaedam dēscribīt attentīus, nē patriam quīdem captam essē sensērīt?*

*What ardour of study think ye there was in Archimedes, who, whilst drawing some figures in the dust with peculiar attention, did not perceive even that his country was captured?*

b. [§ 154.] A Conjunction is sometimes understood.

Philōsōphīae serviās oportēt.  
*It behoves (that you) be a servant to philosophy (supply ut).*

Quaeram justum sit necnē pōēma.  
*I will inquire (whether) it be a true poem or not (supply ūtrum).*

Partem opēre in tantō, sinēret dōlōr, Icăre, hābērēs.  
*Thou, Icarus, wouldst have a share in this great work, did grief allow (supply sī).*

c. [§ 155.] The Rule for the Consecution of Tenses is, that Primary Tenses are subordinated to Primary, Historic to Historic. (§ 48).

Examples may be looked out from the Syntax.

---

reason of Mood is independent of Conjunctions ; but Conjunctions distinguish the relations of Clauses more fully, as Prepositions distinguish the relations of Nouns.

## SUPPLEMENTARY RULES OF AGREEMENT.

[§ 156.] (1) Adjectives are put for Substantives :

*Multā paupĕrī dēsunt, āvārō omnīā.*

*Many things are wanting to the poor man, to the miser all things.*

(2) Infinitives are put for Substantives :

*Vivĕrĕ est vālĕrĕ.*

*To live is to be well.*

(3) Clauses are put for Substantives :

*Crĕdībilĕ est omnīā consīlīō fīrī.*

*It is probable that all things happen by design.*

[§ 157.] The Nominative of an Impersonal Verb is not apparent unless it be an Infinitive or a Clause :

*Pūdĕt ĕum factī (i. e. pūdōr pūdĕt).*

*He is ashamed of the act.*

*Quīd agītūr? Stātūr (i. e. stātīō fīt).*

*What is being done? There is a stand-still.*

*Taedĕt ĕādem audīrĕ millīēs.*

*To hear the same things a thousand times is tedious.*

*Magnī intĕrest ūt tĕ vīdĕam.*

*It is of great importance that I should see you.*

[§ 158.] A Word is understood when omitted by the figure Ellipsis :

*Nīhīl bōnum nīsī quōd hōnestum (understand est twice).*

*Nothing is good but what is morally right.*

*Perfundor gĕlīdā (understand āquā).*

*I bathe myself with cold water.*

[§ 159.] Agreement is varied by the figure called Attraction :

*Nōn omnīs error stultitīā est dīcendā.*

*Not every error must be called folly.*

*Thēbae, quōd Boeōtīae cāp ūt est.*

*Thebes, which is the capital of Bocotia.*

[§ 160.] Agreement with the meaning takes place by the figure called Synesis, especially in poetry :

*Sūbĕunt Tĕgĕaeā jūventūs auxiliō tardī.*

*The youth of Tegea come slow to the succour.*

*Ūbī est īs scĕlūs, quī mĕ perdīdīt?*

*Where is that villain, who has ruined me?*

## OUTLINE OF PROSODY.



[§ 161.] Prosody treats of the quantity of syllables and of the laws of metre.

### ON THE QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES.

#### GENERAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

- [§ 162.] 1. Every diphthong and contracted syllable is long.  
 2. Primitives give their own quantity to their derivatives.  
 3. A vowel coming before a vowel will be short.  
 4. Any vowel becomes long by Position, which two consonants follow, as *trīstis*: or which in the same word *j* follows or *x* or *z*: so *Ājax*, *āxis*, *Amāzon*.  
 5. A vowel, though short by its own power, is doubtful if a mute consonant with a liquid after it follows; thus you will say rightly (*lugūbre melos*) a mournful melody, or *lugūbre*.  
*a.* *Gn* always makes a long syllable, as *āgnus* and *īgnis*: and like wise *gm*; which *tēgmen* and *āgmen* shew.

#### ON THE QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

- [§ 163.] 1. Most words of one syllable are long, as *mē*, *vēr*.  
 2. Words ending in A are long: *frustrā*, and *contrā*, and *parā*.  
*a.* Except Accusative and Nominative Cases: (*Musā*) the Muse sings (*carminā*) songs: the woods resound (*Amaryllidā*) *Amaryllis*.  
 3. E final is short: as *legē*, *timetē*, *carerē*.

[§ 162.] 1. Examples: *heū*; *čōigo* = *cōgo*. Except *prae* before a vowel, as *praeēuntem*.

2. Examples: *pōmum*, *pōmarium*; *sālix*, *sālicetum*. Exceptions are numerous, as *hōmo*, *hūmanus*; *nūbo*, *pronūba*.

3. Examples: *principium*, *prōhibe*. (H is regarded as a breathing only, and not taken into account in Prosody.) Many Greek exceptions; as *Chāonis*, *Aenēas*, *Chio*, *Myrtōus*, *Enyō*. Some Latin, as, *diēi*, *Pompēi*; *aulāi*, *ēheu*; *fīo* (except before *er*, as *fieri*); Common: *fidēi*, *Dīana*; Gen. in *ius*, as *illius*.

[§ 163.] 1. Exceptions: words in l, b, d, t, as *vēl*, *sūb*, *īd*, *ēt*, *stēt*. Also *ēs* and its compounds, as, *adēs*; *quē*, *vē*, *nē* interrogative; *nēc*, *ān*, *īn*, *pēr*, *tēr*, *vīr*, *cōr*, *fāc*, *fēr*, *bīs*, *īs*, *cīs*, *quīs*.

2. *a.* Most Vocatives in ā are short; as *Orestā*; also *ejā*, *itā*, *quā*.

3. Except Cases of the 1st and 5th Declension, as *Thisbē*, *speciē*; their Derivatives, as *quarē*, *hodiē*; Imperatives Sing. of the 2nd Conj., as *audē* (but *cavē* is doubtful). Adverbs derived from Adjectives; as, *miserē*; also *fermē*, *ferē*, *ohē*, *fāmē*.



4. Words in I are long; *dicī* and *plebī* and *dotī*.
5. Words in O are long; *virgō* and *multō* and *juvō*.
6. Words in U are long, so *tū* and *dictū* and *diū*.
7. Y final is short; thus poets have *chelŷ*, *Tiphŷ*.
8. Words in C are long, as *illĕ*, except *donĕc*.
9. Shorten words in L, D, T; thus *Hannibāl*, *illūd*, *amavit*.
10. N final is short, *Ilion*, *agmĕn*, are instances.
11. R final is short; as *calcār*, *amabitūr*, *Hectōr*.
12. Words in As are long; as *terrās* and *Menalcās*.
13. Words in Es are long; as *sedēs* and *viderēs*.
14. Is final is short; as *dicerĭs*, *utilĭs*, *ensĭs*.

a. The Oblique Cases Plural are excepted, as *terrās*, *vobīs*; also the Second Person Singular, Present Tense, of the Fourth Conjugation, as *audīs*; the compounds of *vīs*, *sīs*; *matīs*, *nolīs*, and *velīs*.

15. Words in Os are long, as *ventōs* and *sacerdōs*.
16. Us final is short: *olŷs*, *intŷs*, *amamŷs*, are instances.

a. Except from this rule the contracted cases of the Fourth Declension, as *artŷs*; and words which, increasing, have long penult; as *tellŷs* and *incŷs*, *juventŷs* and *senectŷs*.

17. Ys final is short: *chelŷs*, *Othrŷs*, *Erinŷs*, are instances.

a. The custom of Authors governs Quantity, if a rule is wanting.

#### ON THE LAWS OF METRE.

[§ 164.] 2. A long syllable following a short is called Iambus (∪ -): but if a long syllable goes before a short one, that is a Trochee (- ∪): a Spondee will consist of two long syllables (- -); a Dactyl is formed by a long and two short syllables (- ∪ ∪).

#### ON SCANSION AND FIGURES OF SCANSION.

[§ 165.] 1. Scansion, which Figures adjust by various art, distributes a Verse according to Feet.

4. Exceptions are: Greek Datives and Vocatives, as *Thyrsidī*, *Chlorī*; also *sicubī*, *neubŷ*, *nisī*, *quasī*. But *mihī*, *tibī*, *sibī*, *ubī*, *ibī*, are doubtful.

5. The quantity of words in O, especially Verbs and Proper Names, fluctuates in different authors, and at various eras. Oblique Cases, and nearly all Adverbs in O, are long always.

10. Exceptions: many Greek words, as *Hymĕn*, *Ammōn*.

11. Exceptions: many Greek words, as *cratĕr*, *aĕr*.

12. Exceptions: Greek cases of Third Declension, as *Arcās*, *lampadās*. Also *anās*, a *duck*.

13. Exceptions: Greek Plurals increasing; as, *Troadĕs*: also *penĕs*; and some Singular Nouns which increase short, as *segĕs*.

14. a. *Gratīs*, *forīs*, are long: and Substantives which increase long, as *Samnīs*, *Simoīs*. *Ris* of the Future and Perfect in Verbs is doubtful, as *fecerĭs*.

15. Some Greek words in *ōs* (ος) are short, as *Argōs*, *epōs*.

16. s. Some words from the Greek in *ūs* are long, as *Sapphŷs*, *Melampŷs*, *Iesŷs*.



2. Synaloepha (Elision) will cut off a Vowel at the end of a word, if there be a vowel at the beginning of the next word: *Phyllid' am' ant' alias*, for *Phyllida amo ante alias*.

3. Ecthlipsis will cut off a Vowel and *m* from the end, if there be a Vowel at the beginning of the next word: *O curas homin'*, *O quant' est in rebus inane*, for *hominum, quantum*.

a. The last syllable of a verse is counted doubtful.

[§ 166.] I. The maple is in the woods; the spirited horse wins the Olympia. You will sing with your voice: up, lead dogs, unless you are white on the temples. A club strikes; a nail holds firm, and a key opens. To please a companion, put on, as a companion, affable manners. Comedians, seek the stage; messmates, seek supper. Consult teachers, so you consult for yourself. Often has his own desire injured one desirous of war. Songs are recited, while temples are dedicated to the Lord. He trusted not to untie, who severed the knot with a sword. The man leads a wife; the bride veils for a husband. This man trains dogs to take them out soon against boars. If you have not money, you are destitute, and eat not delicacies. The sea often deceives one who relies too much on the clear surface. The sun chases the clouds, and irrecoverable time flies. By what a man sins, by the same the same man is soon punished. It is a difficult labour under the weight of which I sink. The boy's forehead is smooth, but the girl's tongue light. Seek hares in plains, elegancies in books. I bid not a penny for him who bids not a penny for me. I had rather break with my jaw good apples than bad. Merchandise is sold, and reward comes gained by toil. Silvia strokes lovingly, while she milks, her gentle cow. You will have done a duty, if you have sent coins to the wretched. Strive, little boy, whoever shalt desire to shine. She who is red, smeared with paint, is forgetful of decency. He fell by base treachery, whom a friend killed. A mouth commands, but a bone is eaten with the mouth. It is a wife's part to bring forth and obey, a husband's to procure. Obedient children make parents rejoice. Play at ball: a javelin is hurled; *pīla* is a pillar. *Plāga* is for a net and a country; *plāga* for a blow. People are the citizens of a city: but poplar is a tree. The prow is the front (of a ship), the stern the hind part, and the keel the lowest. A bail promises, but a vessel contains food. A bail kindly assures the person, but a surety money only. If you wish to go quick, you have need to use all the sails.

II. Trust, but first see; he who trusts, and has not well seen, is deceived: see lest you be inveigled by trust. The same fortune makes partners; the same toil comrades; one duty colleagues: but school, play, the table, make dear companions. *Lira* is the furrow of a field: *lyra* (the lyre) touched utters notes. Let him not be secure, who is not safe from the enemy: you have banks by a river, shore by the sea. Men are old by time; ancients lived formerly: I feign what is not, and dissemble what is. Have you any news? Seek another: I know nothing. That chatterer relates what matters little. If perchance you sit anywhere, and the seat is convenient to you, sit in that seat: nor give up the place to me.

## APPENDIX.

## I. NOTES ON ETYMOLOGY.

## I. NOUNS.

## A. Substantives:—

## FIRST DECLENSION.

a. The old Genitive ending **as** remains in *familias*: *as*, *pater-*(*mater-*) *familias*, *father* (*mother*) *of a family*.

b. The Gen. in **āī** is found in epic and comic poetry: *as*, *aquāī*.

c. Nouns which form Gen. Pl. in **um**, instead of *arum*, are (1) Patronymics: *as*, *Aeneādes*; (2) Some names of people, as *Lapitha*; (3) Compounds with *-cola*, *-gena*, as *caelicola*, *terrigena*; (4) *Drachma*, *amphora*.

d. Nouns like *Dea*, with Dat. Abl. Pl. **abus**, are some of those which correspond to Masculine Nouns in *us*: *as*, *filia*, *nata*, *liberta*, *mula*, &c.

## SECOND DECLENSION.

a. Nouns declined like *filius* are *genius*, *familiar spirit*, and Latin Proper Names in *ius*, as *Mercurius*, *Laelius*.

b. The Gen. **ī** was contracted into **ī** by writers as late as Cicero, Virgil, and Horace. Ovid writes **ī**.

c. The Gen. Pl. in **um** for *orum* appears in (1) names of coins, weights, measures, and trades: *as*, *numus*, *sestertius*, *medimnus*, *modius*, *talentum*, *faber*. So, *denūm talentūm*; *praefectus fabrūm*. (2) Some names of people: *as*, *Argivus*, *Danaus*. Poets often use it in words of short penult, as *virūm* for *virorum*.

d. Greek Nouns in **os**, *m.* and *f.*, have Acc. on or *um*: *as*, *Delos*; Acc. *Delon* or *Delum*. Nouns in **on**, *n.*, are like *bellum* in all but N. V. A. Sing.; *as*, *Pelion*.

e. *Pelagus*, *sea*, *virus*, *poison*, being Neuter, have Acc. and Voc. the same as Nom. *Vulgus*, *common people*, is Masculine or Neuter, and has *-um* or *-us* in Acc. These three Nouns have no Plural.

## THIRD DECLENSION.

## a. Variant Consonant Nouns:

	<i>Old man, Swine, Ox or cow, Jupiter,</i>				
	<i>m.</i>	<i>c.</i>	<i>c.</i>	<i>m.</i>	
(a) N. V.	<i>Senex</i>	<i>Sus</i>	<i>Bos</i>	<i>Juppiter</i>	
Acc.	<i>Sen-</i>	<i>Su-</i>	<i>Bov-</i>	<i>Jov-</i>	<b>em</b>
Gen.	<i>Sen-</i>	<i>Su-</i>	<i>Bov-</i>	<i>Jov-</i>	<b>īs</b>
Dat.	<i>Sen-</i>	<i>Su-</i>	<i>Bov-</i>	<i>Jov-</i>	<b>ī</b>
Abl.	<i>Sen-</i>	<i>Su-</i>	<i>Bov-</i>	<i>Jov-</i>	<b>ē</b>
N. V. A.	<i>Sen-</i>	<i>Su-</i>	<i>Bov-</i>	—	<b>ēs</b>
Gen.	<i>Sen-</i>	<i>Su-</i>	—	—	<b>um</b>
D. Abl.	<i>Sen-</i>	—	—	—	<b>ibus</b>

Sus has Dat. Abl. Pl. subus or suibus : bos has Gen. Pl. boum, Dat. Abl. bōbus or būbus.

Iter, *journey*, n. ; Gen. itiner-is, etc.

Jecur, *liver*, n. ; Gen. jecōris or jecinōr-is, etc.

Supellex, *furniture*, f. ; Acc. supellectilem, etc.

- (b) Parisyllable Nouns, declined like Consonant Nouns, are :  
 (1) the syncopated words, pater, mater, frater, accipiter ;  
 (2) canis, juvenis, vates, volucris.

b. Variant I-Nouns :

- (a) Imparisyllable I-Nouns, like dens, are : (1) Nouns with Stem ending in two Consonants, except lynx ; (2) the words, glis, lis, mas, mus, nix (nivis), strix, with faux and vis.  
 (b) Nouns like tussis are : sitis, *thirst*, f. ; amussis, *carpenter's rule*, f. ; with a few more. Also names of rivers, as Tiberis, *Tiber*, m. ; of towns, as Hispalis, *Seville*, f.  
 (c) Like clavis : classis, *fleet*, f. ; febris, *fever* ; messis, *harvest* ; navis, *ship*, f. ; puppis, *stern*, f., and a few others. Restis, *rope*, f., Abl. ě ; securis, *axe*, f., Abl. ĭ only.  
 (d) Like canalis are Adjectival Nouns : as, aedilis, m.  
 (e) Like imber are : ūter, *bladder* ; venter, *belly*, m.

c. Greek Consonant-Nouns form Acc. Sing. in *ǎ* or *em* ; Acc. Plur. usually in *ās* :

Gigas, <i>giant</i> , m.	gigant-	ǎ, em	ǎs, ěs
Lampas, <i>torch</i> , f.	lampǎd-	ǎ, em	ǎs
Cratĕr, <i>bowl</i> , m.	cratĕr-	ǎ, em	ǎs
Aĕr, <i>air</i> , m.	aĕr-	ǎ, em	ǎs
So, Naĭs, <i>Naiad</i> , f.	Naĭd-	ǎ, em	ǎs, ěs
Herōs, <i>hero</i> , m.	herō-	ǎ, em	ǎs, ěs
Eriny-, <i>fury</i> , f.	Eriny-	ǎ	ǎs

(a) Greek Nouns in *is*, *ys*, have Voc. *ĭ*, *ŷ* : as, Pari, Naĭ, Erinŷ.

(b) Greek I-Nouns have Nom. *is*, f. ; Voc. *ĭ* ; Acc. *ĭn* or *im* ; Gen. *ĕōs* ; Dat. Abl. *ĭ* : as, poĕsis, *poetry*.

(c) The following are Heteroclite Masculine forms of Proper Names :

Nom.	Voc.	Acc.	Gen.	Dat.	Abl.
1. ĕŭs	eu	ĕum, ĕǎ	ĕĭ, ĕōs	ĕĭ, ĕĭ, ĕō	ĕō
2. ĕs, ĕŭs	ĕ, eu	em, ĕn, ĕǎ	ĭs, ĕĭ, ĭ, ĕōs	ĭ	ĕ
3. ĕs	ĕ, ĕs	em, ĕn	ĭs, ĭ	ĭ	ĕ, ĕ
4. ĕs	ĕs	em, ĕǎ	ĭs, ĭ	ĭ	ĕ
5. ĕs	ĕ, ĕs	em, ĕn, ĕtǎ	ĭs, ĕtĭs	ĭ, ĕtĭ	ĕ, ĕtĕ

*Examples*.—1. Orpheus, Peleus. 2. Achilles, Ulixes (ĕŭs). 3. Socrates, Thucydides. 4. Eteocles, Pericles. 5. Chremes, Thales.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

a. The Nouns which prefer **ŭbŭs** to **ĭbŭs** in Dat. Abl. Pl. are Disyllables in **cus** : as, arcus, *bow* : also, tribus, *tribe* ; partus, *birth* ; artus (Plur.), *limbs* ; and veru, *spit*, N.

b. Poets often contract **ui** into **ŭ** : as, Parce metu.—VIRG.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

a. Dies, *day*, and res, *thing*, are the only Nouns which form the increasing Cases in the Plural. Most have no Plural at all.

b. Poets contract *ei* into *ē*: as, Constantis juvenem fide.—Hor.

c. Fidei generally has *e* short: so rei, spei.

d. Respublica, *commonwealth*, declines both elements: Acc. rempublicam, Gen. reipublicae, etc. So jusjurandum, *oath*; Gen. jurisjurandi, etc.

## ANOMALOUS SUBSTANTIVES.

a. The chief Nouns, Plural only (besides those named § 25), are:

DECL. 1. f.	Deliciae, <i>delight</i>	Nonae, <i>Nones</i>
	Epulae, <i>feast</i>	Nundinae, <i>market-day</i>
	Exsequiae, <i>funeral rites</i>	Nuptiae, <i>bridal</i>
	Feriae, <i>holidays</i>	Reliquiae, <i>remnant</i>
	Insidiae, <i>ambush</i>	Tenebrae, <i>darkness</i>
	Kalendae, <i>Calends</i>	Athenae, <i>Athens</i>
	Minae, <i>threats</i>	Thebae, <i>Thebes</i>
DECL. 2.	Fasti, <i>annals</i>	Delphi
	Liberi, <i>children</i>	Gabii
DECL. 3.	Fores, <i>door</i> , f.	Moenia, <i>town walls</i> , n.
DECL. 4.	Artus, <i>limbs</i> , m.	Idus, <i>Ides</i> , f.

b. The most important Nouns which change meaning in Plural are:—

DECL. 1.	Copia, <i>plenty</i> , f.	Copiae, <i>forces</i>
DECL. 2.	Ludus, <i>play</i> , m.	Ludi, <i>public games</i>
	Castrum, <i>fort</i> , n.	Castra, <i>camp</i>

c. Add to Defective Nouns:

b. Mane, *morning*, Nom. Acc. Abl. Sing.

c. Fas, *right*; nefas, *wrong*; instar, *likeness*; nihil, *nothing*; necesse, *necessity*; opus, *need*: Nom. Acc. Sing.

d. Fors, *chance*; Abl. S. forte, *by chance*.

e. Sponte, *by one's own choice*.

## B. Adjectives:—

a. Like melior are declined Comparatives; and vetus (veter-), *ancient*.

b. Like felix, Adjectives in ax, ix, ox, ux.

c. Like ingens, Adjectives in -ns, -rs, -ex; also locuples (locuplēt-), *wealthy*; par (pār-) with its compounds. Present Participles have Abl. S. ī, when used as Epithets; otherwise ě: with occasional exception.

d. Like acer, Adjectives of the Second Class in -cer, -ster; also celēber, *renowned*; salūber, *healthful*.

e. Abl. S. ī, Gen. Pl. um; no Neut. Pl. Nom. Acc.: inop-s, *destitute*; vigil, *wakeful*; memor, *mindful*; degener, *degenerate*; uber, *fruitful*; anceps (ancipit-), *dubious*; praiceps (praecipit-), *headlong*.

f. Abl. S. ě, Gen. Pl. um; no Neut. Pl.: ales (alit-), *winged*; dives (divit-), *rich*; sospes (sospit-), *safe*; superstes (superstit-), *surviving*; compos (compot-), *possessing*; impos (impot-), *not possessing*; deses, reses (desid-, resid-), *inactive*; pauper, *poor*; puber, *of age*.



C. Pronouns :—

- a. The suffixes -mēt, -tē, -ptē, -cē, strengthen various Pronouns.  
 (a) Mēt may be joined 1. to ego and its cases, except Gen. Plur.: as, egomet, *I myself*; 2. to the cases of tu, except Nom. Sing.: as, vosmet, *ye yourselves*; 3. to se and its cases, except sui: as, sibimet; 4. to the cases of suus: as, suamet facta.  
 (b) Tē is joined to tu: as tute; also, tutemet, *thou thyself*.  
 (c) Ptē is joined to the Abl. Sing. of the Possessive Pronouns: as, meopte consilio, *by my advice*.  
 (d) Cē is joined to the Demonstratives: as, huncce, hujusce. For illece, istece, are written illic, istic, which may be declined,

	Sing.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	istic	istaec	istuc	istice	istaece	istace
Acc.	istunc	istanc	istuc	istosce	istace	istace
Gen.	istiusce, etc.			istorumce, etc.		

- b. From the Possessives noster, vester, cujus, are derived:  
 Nostr-as (āt-), *of our country*. | Cuj-as (āt-), *of what country*.  
 Vestr-as (āt-), *of your country*. |

D. Derived Nouns.

1. Substantiva Mobilia have a Feminine as well as a Masculine form:

a. Many O-Nouns have a Feminine A-Noun formed by changing ūs into ā: agnus, *lamb*; asinus, *ass*; cervus, *stag*; deus, *god*; dominus, *lord*; equus, *horse*; famulus, *house-servant*; filius, *son*; libertus, *freedman*; lupus, *wolf*; maritus, *husband*; mulus, *mule*; natus, *son*; servus, *slave*; sponsus, *bridegroom*; ursus, *bear*, &c. Fem. agna, asina, &c.

Avus, *grandfather*, has avia; gallus, *cock*, gallina; caper, *he-goat*, capra and capella; puer, *boy*, puella; magister, minister, change *ter* into *tra*; poeta, *poet*, poetria; citharista, *harper*, citharistria. Taurus, *bull*, has vacca, *cow*; verna, *born-slave*, has ancilla, *maid-servant*.

b. Consonant-Nouns, verbal, in tōr, sōr, often have a Feminine trix: as ultor, *avenger*, ultrix; victor, *conqueror*, victrix; tonsor, *barber*, tonstrix. The forms in trix are often used as Adjectives: as, arma victricia, *victorious arms*.

c. Caupo, *vintner* (3), has Fem. copa (1); cliens, *client* (3), clienta (1); fidicen, *lute-player* (3), fidicina (1); tibicen, *flute-player* (3), tibicina (1); leo, *lion* (3), leaena or lea (1).

d. Gentile names: as, Cres, *Cretan* (3), Cressa (1); Laco, *Lacedaemonian* (3), Lacaena (1); Libys, *Libyan* (3), Libyssa (1); Phoenix, *Phoenician* (3), Phoenissa (1); Thrax, *Thracian* (3), Threissa (1); Tros, *Trojan* (3) Troas (3), &c.

e. Nepos, *grandson* (3), has Fem. neptis (3); aries, *ram* (3), ovis, *ewe* (3); vir, *man* (2), mulier, *woman* (3); gener, *son-in-law* (2), nurus (4); socer, *father-in-law* (2), socrus (4); senex, *old man* (3), anus (4).

Note. Nouns having only one Gender for both sexes are called Epicoena (ἐπίκοινα): as, passer, *sparrow*, m.; vulpes, *fox*, f. Sex must be expressed, if needful, by the words mas, femina: as, vulpes mas, *a dog-fox*.



2. Deminutives are Derived Nouns which express smallness. Deminutives are formed, chiefly, in

M.	F	N.
1. -ŭlus	-ŭla	-ŭlum
2. -ŏlus	-ŏla	-ŏlum
3. -ellus	-ella	-ellum
4. -cŭlus	-cŭla	-cŭlum
1. riv-ulus, <i>streamlet</i>	cist-ula, <i>small chest</i>	scut-ulum, <i>small shield</i>
2. fili-olus, <i>little son</i>	capre-ola, <i>young roe</i>	savi-olum, <i>kiss</i>
3. ag-ellus, <i>small field</i>	pat-ella, <i>saucer</i>	lab-ellum, <i>lip</i>
4. flos-culus, <i>floweret</i>	parti-cula, <i>particle</i>	munus-culum, <i>little present.</i>

Adjectives are also diminished: as, parvulus, pallidulus, misellus.

3. Patronymica are Personal Names, derived from a parent or ancestor.

<i>Masc.</i>		
ădēs,	Aeneădes,	<i>son of</i> Aeneas.
īdēs,	Tyndarīdes	„ Tyndarus.
īdēs,	Nelīdes	„ Neleus.
īădēs	Thestiădes	„ Thestius.
<i>Fem.</i>		
īs,	Tyndaris,	<i>daughter of</i> Tyndarus.
ēīs,	Nelēis,	„ Neleus.
ăs,	Thestias,	„ Thestius.

And some others.

## II. COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

### A. CHANGES OF PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

(1) A, ab=

A before *m, v*: as, amitto, avoco.

Ab before *c, t*: as, abscedo, absterreo.

As before *p*: as, asporto.

Au before *f*: as, aufero, aufugio. But abfui, abfore.

Ab before other letters: as, abeo, abdo.

(2) Ad remains before *b, d, h, j, m, v*, and vowels: as, adbibo, addo, adhibeo, adjicio, admitto, advoco, adeo.

becomes *a-* before *gn, sc, sp*: as, agnosco, ascendo, aspicio.

is assimilated before other letters: as, affero, appono, assisto.

(3) Con- (for cum), in-, are written com-, im-, before *p, b, m*: as, comparo, combibo, immitto.

are assimilated before *l, r*: as, colludo, irruo.

Con- becomes *co-* before vowels, *h*, and *gn*: as, coeo, coheres, cognosco. So ignosco. Note comēdo, comburo.

Con-, in-, remain before other consonants: as, cœnfero, induco.

(4) Ob, sub, are assimilated before *c, g, p, f*: as, occurro, opono, suppono. So summoveo.

Except suscipio, suscito, suspendo, suspicio.

They remain before other letters.

Except ostendo, sustineo, sustollo, sustuli, surripio.

Note obsolesco, omitto.

- (5) E, e x, are assimilated before *f*: as, effero.  
 Ex before vowels, *h, c, q, p, s, t*: as, exeo, exhibeo, excedo, exquiro, expello, exstruo,\* extraho.  
 E before others: as, educo, evoco.
- (6) Trans becomes *tra* before *d, j, n*: as, trado, trajicio, trano.  
 Tran- before *s*: as, transcribo.
- (7) Dis- is assimilated before *f*: as, differo.  
 Remains before gutturals, labials, *t, j*, and *s* with vowel: as, discerpo, dispello, distraho, disjicio, dissero. But dijudico.  
 Di- before *s* with consonant, and before other consonants: as, distringo, diruo.  
 Not used before vowels. But dir-ibeo for dis-hibeo, dir-imo for dis-imo.
- (8) Re- se- add *d* in reddo, redeo, redhibeo, redĭmo, redoleo, seditio.

## B. VOWEL-CHANGE IN COMPOSITION.

- a. Verbs weakening *a* into *e* in all forms of their compounds:  
 (1) damnare, jactare, lactare, patrare, sacrare, tractare;  
 (2) arcĕre; (3) -candĕre, carpĕre, scandĕre, spargĕre, gradi, pati; (4) farcĕre, partĭri.
- b. Verbs weakening *a* into *u* in all forms: (1) calcare, saltare;  
 (3) quatĕre, (-cutĕre, -cussi, -cussum).
- c. Verbs weakening *ae* into *ĭ* in all forms: (3) caedĕre (-cĭdi, -cĭsum), laedĕre (-lĭdĕre, -lĭsi, -lĭsum), quaerĕre (-quĭrĕre, -quĭsĭvi, -quĭsĭtum).
- d. Verb weakening *au* into *ū* in all forms: (3) claudĕre (-clūdĕre, -clūsi, -clūsum).
- e. Verb weakening *au* into *ō* in all forms: (3) plaudĕre (-plōdĕre, -plōsi, -plōsum). Exc. applaudĕre.
- . Verbs weakening *a* into *i* in all forms: (2) habĕre, latĕre, placĕre, tacĕre; (3) sapĕre, statuĕre. Exc. complacĕre, perplacĕre.
- g. Verbs which vary the Vowel in the forms of compounds:—
- (a) *a* × *i, e, a*: (3) agĕre (-igĕre, -ĕgi, -actum), frangĕre (-fringĕre, -frĕgi, -fractum), pangĕre (-pingĕre, -pĕgi, -pactum).  
 Exc. circum-, peragĕre (-ĕgi, -actum), cogĕre (co-ĕgi, -actum), degĕre (dĕgi), satagĕre (satĕgi), repangĕre.
- (b) *a* × *i, i, a*: (3) cadĕre (-cĭdĕre, -cĭdi), tangĕre (-tingĕre, -tĭgi, -tactum).
- (c) *a* × *i, i, e*: (3) canĕre (-cinĕre, -cĭnui, -centum), rapĕre (-ripĕre, -ripĭui, -reptum).
- (d) *a* × *i, e, e*: (3) capĕre (-cipĕre, -cĕpi, -ceptum), facĕre (-ficĕre, -fĕci, -fectum), jacĕre (-jĭcĕre, -jĕci, -jectum), lacĕre (-licĕre, -lexi, -lectum). Exc. benefacĕre and many other compounds of facĕre (-fĕcĕre, -fĕci, -factum), elicĕre, elicui, elicĭtum.
- (e) *a* × *i, i, u*: (4) salĭre (-silĭre, -silui, -sultum).
- (f) *a* × *i, e*: (2) fatĕri (-fitĕri, -fessus); (3) apĭsci (-ipĭsci, -eptus).

\* The Greek form *ec* (ἐκ) must be assumed when expecto, exul, &c., are written for ec-specto, ec-sul, &c.

- (g) *e x i, i, e*: (2) *tenēre* (-*tinēre*, -*tinui*, -*tentum*).  
 (h) *e x i, e, e*: (2) *sedēre* (-*sidēre*, -*sēdi*, -*sessum*); (3) *regēre* (-*rigēre*, -*rexi*, -*rectum*), *specēre* (-*spicēre*, -*spexi*, -*specum*), *premēre* (-*primēre*, -*pressi*, -*pressum*), *emēre* (-*imēre*, -*ēmi*, -*emptum*), *legēre* (-*ligēre*, -*lēgi*, -*lectum*). Exc. *circumsedēre*, *pergēre* (*perrexi*, *perrectum*), *surgēre* (*surrexi*, *surrectum*); *co-*, *per-*, *inter-* (-*emēre*, -*ēmi*, -*emptum*). Also *sublegēre* (-*lēgi*, -*lectum*), *di-ligēre*, *neg-*, *intellegēre* (-*lexi*, -*lectum*). These four last are from *legēre*, *to choose*. The compounds of *legēre*, *to read*, are *per-*, *prae-*, *re-* (-*legēre*, -*lēgi*, -*lectum*).

## EXAMPLES OF COMPOUND VERBS.

a. (1) <i>Condemno, condemn</i>	<i>Conticeo, be silent</i>
Objecto, <i>cast forward</i>	(3) <i>Desipio, be silly</i>
Delecto, <i>delight</i>	<i>Restituo, restore</i>
Impet̄ro, <i>obtain</i> (by asking)	g. (a) (3) <i>Abigo, drive away</i>
Consēcro, <i>consecrate</i>	<i>Refringo, beat back</i>
Obtrecto, <i>disparage</i>	<i>Impingo, knock against</i>
(2) <i>Coerceo, confine</i>	(b) (3) <i>Occido, die</i>
(3) <i>Incendo, set on fire</i>	<i>Attingo, reach</i>
Exc̄erpo, <i>cull</i>	(c) (3) <i>Succino, sing low</i>
Ascendo, <i>climb</i>	<i>Diripio, tear asunder</i>
Dispergo, <i>disperse</i>	(d) (3) <i>Decipio, deceive</i>
Progredior, <i>go forward</i>	<i>Efficio, effect</i>
Perpetior, <i>endure</i>	<i>Ejicio, cast out</i>
(4) <i>Infercio, stuff in</i>	<i>Allicio, allure</i>
Dispertior, <i>distribute</i>	(e) (4) <i>Circumsilio, leap round</i>
b. (1) <i>Proculco, trample down</i>	(f) (2) <i>Diffiteor, disown</i>
Insulto, <i>insult, leap on</i>	(3) <i>Adipiscor, acquire</i>
(3) <i>Decutio, shake down</i>	(g) (2) <i>Abstineo, abstain</i>
c. (3) <i>Occido, kill</i>	(h) (2) <i>Praesideo, preside</i>
Collido, <i>dash together</i>	(3) <i>Porrigo, stretch</i>
Acquiro, <i>acquire</i>	<i>Transpicio, look through</i>
d. (3) <i>Includo, shut in</i>	<i>Opprimo, weigh down</i>
e. (3) <i>Explodo, stamp off</i>	<i>Eximo, take out</i>
f. (2) <i>Prohibeo, prohibit</i>	Colligo, <i>collect</i>
Displiceo, <i>displease</i>	Diligo, <i>love</i>
	Perl̄ego, <i>read through</i>

## III. CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS AND PARTICLES.

The Correlation of Pronouns and Particles should be carefully noted. The full series comprises—1 Interrogativum; 2 Demonstrativa; 3 Relativum; 4 Indefinita; 5 Universalia. These latter again contain *a. Universalia Relativa et Indefinita*; *b. Univ. Alternativa*; *c. Univ. Distributiva et Inclusiva*; *d. Univ. Exclusiva*. *Alius* and *alter* are *Demonstrativa Partitiva*. The dual series (*uter, &c.*) is marked \*.

## PRONOUNS.

1 <i>Quis? qui? who? what?</i>	<i>Idem, the same</i>
* <i>Uter? which of two?</i>	<i>Alius, another</i>
2 <i>Is, ille, iste, that</i>	* <i>Alter, the one, the other</i>
<i>Hic, this</i>	3 <i>Qui, who</i>

- 4 Quis, qui, *any one*  
 Aliquis, aliqui } *any one*  
 Quispiam  
 Quisquam, ullus, *any at all*  
 Quidam, *a certain one*  
 \*Alteruter, *one or other*
- 5 a. Quisquis, quicumque, *whosoever, whatsoever*  
 \*Uteruter, utercumque, *whichever*
- b. Quivis, quilibet, *any you will*  
 \*Utervis, uterlibet, *which you will*
- c. Quisque, *each (of several)*  
 Omnes, universi, *all*  
 \*Uterque, *each (of two)*  
 \*Ambo, *both*
- d. Nemo, nullus, *no one, none*  
 \*Neuter, *neither*

## ADVERBS OF PLACE WHERE.

- 1 Ubi? *where?*  
 \*Utrobi? *in which place?*
- 2 Ibi, illic, istic, *there*  
 Hic, *here*  
 Ibidem, *in the same place*  
 Alibi, *elsewhere*
- 3 Ubi, *where*
- 4 Ubi, alicubi, uspiam, *anywhere*  
 Usquam, *anywhere at all*
- 5 a. Ubiubi, ubicumque, *where-soever*
- b. Ubivis, ubilibet, *where you will*
- c. Ubique, *everywhere*  
 \*Utrobique, *in both places*
- d. Nusquam, *nowhere*  
 \*Neutrobi, *in neither place*

## ADVERBS OF PLACE WHITHER.

- 1 Quo? *whither?*  
 \*Utro? *to which place?*
- 2 Eo, illuc, istuc, *thither*  
 Huc, *hither*  
 Eodem, *to the same place*  
 Alio, *to another place*
- 3 Quo, *whither*
- 4 Quo, aliquo, quopiam, *anywhither*
- Quoquam, *anywhither at all*
- 5 a. Quoquo, quocumque, *whithersoever*
- b. Quovis, quolibet, *whither you will*
- c. \*Utroque, *to each place*
- d. \*Neutro, *to neither place.*

## ADVERBS OF PLACE WHENCE.

- 1 Unde, *whence?*
- 2 Inde, illinc, istinc, *thence*  
 Hinc, *hence*  
 Indidem, *from the same side*  
 Aliunde, *from another side*
- 3 Unde, *whence*
- 4 Unde, alicunde, *from some side*
- 5 a. Undeunde, Undecumque  
*from whatever side*
- b. Undevis, undelibet, *from what side you will*
- c. Undique, *from every side*  
 \*Utrinque, *from each side* †

## ADVERBS OF TIME WHEN.

- 1 Quando? ubi? *when?*
- 2 Tum, tunc, *then*  
 Nunc, jam, *now*  
 Simul, *at the same time*  
 Alias, *at another time*
- 3 Quum, ubi, *when*
- 4 Quando, aliquando, *ever*  
 Unquam, *ever at all*
- 5 a. Quandocumque, *whenever*
- c. Quandoque, *at any time*  
 Semper, *always*
- d. Nunquam, *never*

† So quā, *in what direction?* eā, hāc, aliā, quā, aliquā, quaquā, &c.  
 quorsum, *whitherward?* illorsum, aliquorsum, &c.  
 See the series of qualis, quantus, quot, § 38 (g).



## ADVERBS OF NUMBER.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 Quoties? <i>how often?</i>             | 4 Aliquoties, <i>several times</i>          |
| 2 Toties, <i>so often</i>                | 5 a. Quotiescumque, <i>how often soever</i> |
| 3 Quoties, ( <i>as often</i> ) <i>as</i> |   |

## ADVERBS OF MANNER.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 Quomodo? quemadmodum?<br>ut? quam? <i>how?</i>   | 3 Quomodo, quemadmodum,<br>ut, <i>as</i>   |
| 2 Ita, sic, tam, <i>so</i><br>Item, itidem, <i>in like manner</i><br>Aliter, secus, <i>otherwise</i> | 5 a. Ac, atque, quam, <i>as, than</i><br>5 a. Utut, utcumque, quamquam, <i>however</i> |

## ADVERBS OF CAUSE.

- 1 Cur? quare? *why? wherefore?*
- 2 Ideo, propterea, idcirco, *on that account*
- 3 Cur, quare, *why*; quod, quia, *because*

## CORRELATION BETWEEN A DEMONSTRATIVE ADVERB AND A CONJUNCTION APPEARS ALSO IN

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (1) Consecutive Construction:                                    | 2 Usque, eo, &c., <i>so long, &amp;c.</i>                           |
| 2. Adeo, ita, sic, tam, tantum, &c., <i>so, so much, &amp;c.</i> | 3 Dum, donec, quoad, <i>until</i>                                   |
| 3. Ut, ut non, ut nihil, ut nemo, &c., <i>that, &amp;c.</i>      | (4) Conditional Construction:                                       |
| (2) Final Construction:  | 2 Modo, tantum, tantummodo, <i>only, &amp;c.</i>                    |
| 2. Idcirco, ideo, &c., <i>for the purpose, &amp;c.</i>           | 3 Si, <i>if</i> (or omitting si)                                    |
| 3. Ut, ne, ut ne, ne quis, &c., <i>that, &amp;c.</i>             | (5) Concessive Construction:  |
| (3) Temporal Construction:                                       | 2 Tamen, <i>yet, nevertheless</i>                                   |
| 2. Tum, tunc, <i>then</i>  | 3 Etsi, etiamsi, quamquam, quamvis, &c., <i>although, &amp;c.</i>   |
| 3. Quum, <i>when</i>   | (6) Comparative Construction:                                       |
| 2. Interea, <i>meantime</i>                                      | 2 Ita, perinde, proinde, similiter, itidem, <i>just so, &amp;c.</i> |
| 3. Dum, <i>whilst</i>  | 3 Quasi, ac si, ut si, &c., <i>as if, &amp;c.</i>                   |

## IV. NUMERALS, MONEY, TIME.

## A. NUMERALS.

a. The Cardinal Numbers are those on which the other Numerals hinge (*cardo, hinge*). Unus is used in the Plural with Substantives 'Plural only': as, una castra, *one camp*. But for higher numbers the Distributives are used: as, bina castra, *two camps*.

b. Ordinal Numerals denote numerical rank (*ordo*): primus, *first, &c.*

c. Distributive Numerals denote so many each or at each time: as, Sexageni caedunt singulos, *sixty men beat each (centurion)*.—TAC. Poets often use them for the Cardinal Numbers.

d. Numeral Adverbs denote the *number of times* that anything happens or is done: semel, *once*; bis, *twice*; &c.



e. The General Rules for writing Compound Numbers, Cardinal, Ordinal, and Distributive, are as follows:—

(1) In Compound Numbers less than 20, either the smaller number without *et* precedes the larger, or the larger with *et* precedes the smaller: as, *Nos Tyndaritani in septemdecim populis Siciliae numeramur, we of Tyndaris are reckoned among the 17 nations of Sicily.*—CIC. *Roscius fundos decem et tres reliquit, Roscius left 13 farms.*—CIC. *Licet dicere decimus et septimus pro septimus decimus.*—PRISC.

(2) In Compound Numbers above 20, either the smaller number with *et* comes first, or the larger without *et*: as, *Romulus septem et triginta regnavit annos, Romulus reigned 37 years.*—CIC. *Dentes triceni bini viris attribuuntur, to men are assigned 32 teeth.*—PLIN.

(3) In Compound Numbers above 100, the larger with or without *et* generally precedes the smaller: as, *Leontinus Gorgias centum et septem complevit annos, Gorgias of Leontini completed 107 years.*—CIC. *Olympiade centesimā quartā-decimā Lysippus fuit, Lysippus lived in the 114th Olympiad.*—PLIN.

(4) The thousands are expressed either by prefixing the numerical Adverbs *bis, ter, &c.*, to *mille* (chiefly in poetry), or by prefixing the Cardinal Numbers to *millia*. as, *duo millia, tria millia, &c.*

*Millia* is generally followed by a Genitive: but if smaller numbers intervene between *millia* and the Substantive, the latter will often stand in the same case as the Numeral: as, *Tria millia et septingenti pedites ierunt, 3700 infantry marched.*—LIV.

(5) The Numbers above 100,000 are expressed by the Numeral Adverbs joined to *centum millia* or *centena millia*, as stated in the following passage: *Non erat apud antiquos numerus ultra centum millia; itaque et hodie multiplicantur haec, ut decies centena millia aut saepius dicantur.*—PLIN.

f. *Unus* is often used in Compound Numbers for *primus*.

g. The Numbers compounded with 8 and 9 are commonly expressed by a subtraction of *duo* and *unus* from the next multiple of 10: as, *duodeviginti (duodevicesimus), 18; undeviginti (undevicesimus), 19; duodetriginta (duodetricesimus), 28; undetriginta (undetricesimus), 29; &c., &c.: duodecentum (duodecentesimus), 98; undecentum (undecentesimus), 99.*

Roman

<i>Symbols.</i>	<i>Cardinalia.</i>	<i>Ordinalia.</i>	<i>Distributiva.</i>	<i>Adverbia.</i>
I.	<i>unus</i>	<i>primus</i>	<i>singuli</i>	<i>semel</i>
II.	<i>duo</i>	<i>secundus or alter</i>	<i>bini</i>	<i>bis</i>
III.	<i>tres</i>	<i>tertius</i>	<i>terni or trini</i>	<i>ter</i>
IV.	<i>quattuor</i>	<i>quartus</i>	<i>quaterni</i>	<i>quater</i>
V.	<i>quinque</i>	<i>quintus</i>	<i>quini</i>	<i>quinquies</i>
VI.	<i>sex</i>	<i>sextus</i>	<i>seni</i>	<i>sexies</i>
VII.	<i>septem</i>	<i>septimus</i>	<i>septeni</i>	<i>septies</i>
VIII.	<i>octo</i>	<i>octavus</i>	<i>octoni</i>	<i>octies</i>
IX.	<i>novem</i>	<i>nonus</i>	<i>noveni</i>	<i>novies</i>
X.	<i>decem</i>	<i>decimus</i>	<i>deni</i>	<i>decies</i>
XI.	<i>undecim</i>	<i>undecimus</i>	<i>undeni</i>	<i>undecies</i>
XII.	<i>duodecim</i>	<i>duodecimus</i>	<i>duodeni</i>	<i>duodecies</i>
XIII.	<i>tredecim</i>	<i>tertius decimus</i>	<i>terni deni</i>	<i>tredecies</i>

<i>Roman Symbols.</i>	<i>Cardinalia.</i>	<i>Ordinalia.</i>	<i>Distributiva.</i>	<i>Adverbia.</i>
XVIII.	duodeviginti	duodevicesimus	duodeviceni	duodevicies
XIX.	undeviginti	undevicesimus	undeviceni	undevicies
XX.	viginti	vicesimus	viceni	vicies
XXI.	{ unus et vi- ginti or vi- ginti unus }	{ primus et vice- simus or vice- simus primus }	viceni singuli	{ semel et vi- cies }
XXX.	triginta	trigesimus	triceni	tricies
C.	centum	centesimus	centeni	centies
CC.	ducenti	ducentesimus	ducenti	ducenties
D or I $\overline{O}$ .	quingenti	quingentesimus	quingeni	quingenties
M or CI $\overline{O}$ .	mille	millesimus	singula millia	millies
MM.	duo millia	bis millesimus	bina millia	bis millies

B. MONEY.

a. The As, or pound of 12 ounces (unciae), was thus divided :

Uncia	= 1 oz. or $\frac{1}{12}$	of the As.	Septunx	= 7 oz. or $\frac{7}{12}$	of the As.
Sextans	= 2	" $\frac{1}{6}$	Bes	= 8	" $\frac{2}{3}$
Quadrans	= 3	" $\frac{1}{4}$	Dodrans	= 9	" $\frac{3}{4}$
Triens	= 4	" $\frac{1}{3}$	Dextans	= 10	" $\frac{5}{6}$
Quincunx	= 5	" $\frac{5}{12}$	Deunx	= 11	" $\frac{11}{12}$
Semissis	= 6	" $\frac{1}{2}$			

b. Unciae usurae =  $\frac{1}{12}$  per cent. per month = 1 per cent. per annum.

Sextantes	= $\frac{1}{6}$	"	"	= 2	"	"
Quadrantes	= $\frac{1}{4}$	"	"	= 3	"	"
etc.		etc.			etc.	

Asses usurae = 1 per cent. per month = 12 per cent. per annum.

Asses usurae were also called centesimae; and binae centesimae = 2 per cent. per month = 24 per cent., &c. Unciarium fenus was 1 uncia yearly per as =  $8\frac{1}{3}$  per cent. per annum.

c. Heres ex asse . . . means heir to the whole estate.  
 Heres ex deunce . . . " heir to  $\frac{11}{12}$  of the estate.  
 Heres ex semisse, or . . . }  
 Heres ex dimidia parte . . . } " heir to  $\frac{1}{2}$  of the estate.  
 etc. etc.

d. The Sestertius (Numus), or Sesterce, was a silver coin equal to  $2\frac{1}{2}$  asses, being  $\frac{1}{4}$  of the Denarius (coin of 10 asses). Its symbol is HS.

The Sestertium (= 1000 sestertii) was not a coin, but a sum, and is only used in the Plural Number.

Sestertia, in the Plural (also represented by HS.) joined with the Cardinal or Distributive Numbers, denotes so many 1000 numi sestertii.

The Numeral Adverbs, joined with (or understanding) sestertii (Gen. Sing.), sestertium numum, or HS., denote so many 100,000 numi sestertii :

Thus HS.X = Sestertii decem, 10 sesterces.

HS.X̄ = Sestertia decem, 10,000 sesterces.

HS.X̄ = Sestertium decies, 1,000,000 sesterces.

C. TIME.—THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

Every Roman month had three chief days: Kalendae (Calends), Nonae (Nones), Idus (Ides). The Calends were always the 1st day of

the month; the Nones were usually on the 5th; the Ides on the 13th; but in four months the Nones were on the 7th, the Ides on the 15th.

March, May, July, October; these are they  
Make Nones the 7th, Ides the 15th day.

These three days, the Calends, Nones, and Ides, were taken as points, from which the other days were counted backwards. That is, the Romans did not say, such and such a day *after*, &c., but such and such a day *before* the Calends, or Nones, or Ides. The rules are: (1) For days before the Calends subtract the day of the month from the number of days in the month increased by two; (2) For days before the Nones or Ides subtract from the day on which they fall, increased by one.

*Examples.*—May 31, Pridie Kalendas Junias.

- „ 30, Ante diem tertium (a.d. III.) Kal. Jun.
- „ 29, „ „ quartum (a.d. IV.) Kal. Jun.
- „ 11, „ „ quintum (a.d. V.) Id. Mai.
- „ 2, „ „ sextum (a.d. VI.) Non. Mai.

Days of English Month.	MARTIUS, MAIUS, JULIUS, OCTOBER, 31 Days.	JANUARIUS, AUGUSTUS, DECEMBER, 31 Days.	APRILIS, JUNIUS, SEPTEMBER, NOVEMBER, 30 Days.	FEBRUARIUS, 28 Days—in every fourth Year 29.
1	Kalendis	Kalendis	Kalendis	Kalendis
2	a.d. VI.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.
3	a.d. V.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.
4	a.d. IV.	Pridie	Pridie	Pridie
5	a.d. III.	Nonis	Nonis	Nonis
6	Pridie	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VIII.
7	Nonis	a.d. VII.	a.d. VII.	a.d. VII.
8	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VI.	a.d. VI.	a.d. VI.
9	a.d. VII.	a.d. V.	a.d. V.	a.d. V.
10	a.d. VI.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.
11	a.d. V.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.
12	a.d. IV.	Pridie	Pridie	Pridie
13	a.d. III.	Idibus	Idibus	Idibus
14	Pridie	a.d. XIX.	a.d. XVIII.	a.d. XVI.
15	Idibus	a.d. XVIII.	a.d. XVII.	a.d. XV.
16	a.d. XVII.	a.d. XVII.	a.d. XVI.	a.d. XIV.
17	a.d. XVI.	a.d. XVI.	a.d. XV.	a.d. XIII.
18	a.d. XV.	a.d. XV.	a.d. XIV.	a.d. XII.
19	a.d. XIV.	a.d. XIV.	a.d. XIII.	a.d. XI.
20	a.d. XIII.	a.d. XIII.	a.d. XII.	a.d. X.
21	a.d. XII.	a.d. XII.	a.d. XI.	a.d. IX.
22	a.d. XI.	a.d. XI.	a.d. X.	a.d. VIII.
23	a.d. X.	a.d. X.	a.d. IX.	a.d. VII.
24	a.d. IX.	a.d. IX.	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VI.
25	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VII.	a.d. V.
26	a.d. VII.	a.d. VII.	a.d. VI.	a.d. IV.
27	a.d. VI.	a.d. VI.	a.d. V.	a.d. III.
28	a.d. V.	a.d. V.	a.d. IV.	Pridie
29	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.	a.d. III.	
30	a.d. III.	a.d. III.	Pridie	
31	Pridie	Pridie		

[In Leap-year, Feb. 24th (a.d. VI. Kal. Mart.) was twice reckoned,—hence this day was called *DIES BISSEXTUS*, and leap-year itself *ANNUS BISSEXTUS*.]

## V. ABBREVIATIONS.

## (1) PRAENOMINA.

A. Aulus	K. Kaeso	Q. Quintus
C. } Gaius	L. Lucius	S. (Sex.) Sextus
G. } Gaius	M. Marcus	Ser. Servius
Cn. } Gnaeus	Mf. Manius	Sp. Spurius
Gn. } Gnaeus	Mam. Mamercus	T. Titus
D. Decimus	P. Publius	Ti. (Tib.) Tiberius.

*Note.*—A Roman of distinction had at least three names: the Praenomen, individual name; the Nomen, name showing the Gens or clan; and the Cognomen, surname showing the Familia or family. Thus, Lucius Junius Brutus expressed Lucius of the Gens Junia and Familia Brutorum. To these were sometimes added one or more Agnomina, titles either of honour (as Africanus, Macedonicus, Magnus, &c.), or expressing that a person had been adopted from another Gens, as Aemilianus, applied to the younger Scipio Africanus, who was the son of L. Paulus Aemilius, but adopted by a Scipio. The full name of the emperor Augustus (originally an Octavius) after he had been adopted by his uncle's will and adorned by the Senate with a title of honour, was Gaius Julius Caesar Octavianus Augustus.

## (2) VARIA.

A. D. Ante diem	HS. Sestertius, Sestertium	P. R. Populus Romanus
A. U. C. Anno urbis conditae	Id. Idus	Pl. Plebis
Aed. Aedilis	Imp. Imperator	Proc. Proconsul
Cal. (Kal.) Calendae	L. Libra	S. Senatus
Cos. Consul	LL. Dupondius	S. P. Q. R. Senatus Populusque Romanus
Coss. Consules	Non. Nonae	S. C. Senatusconsultum
D. Divus	O. M. Optimus Maximus	S. D. P. Salutem dicit plurimam
Des. Designatus	P. C. Patres (et) Conscripti	Tr. Tribunus.
Eq. Rom. Eques Romanus	P. M. Pontifex Maximus	
F. Filius		

## II. NOTES ON SYNTAX.

## I. AGREEMENT. § 88-92. § 156-160.

A. The Subject (§ 88) may be any Noun-term, § 87.

B. (1) The term Adjective (§ 89) includes Participles and Adjectival Pronouns.

(2) An Adjective agrees as Epithet with a Substantive: as Complement with any Noun-term.

(3) Adjectives are used as Substantives (§ 156): 1. In the Masc. Sing. and Pl., *man* or *men* being implied: as, *amicus*, a friend; *sapiens*, a wise man; *stultus*, a fool; *boni*, good men; *multi*, many; *plurique*, most. 2. In the Neut. Sing. abstractly: as, *Honestum et utile*, morality and expediency.—Cic. *Triste lupus stabulis*, the wolf is a bane to the stalls.—Virg. 3. In the Neut. Pl., *things* being implied: as, *multa*, many things; *omnia*, all things.



C. The term Substantive (§ 90) includes all Noun-terms. A Substantive may be in Apposition to any Noun-term, as Appositive Epithet or Complement. An Apposite usually agrees in Number also with its Noun, sometimes in Gender: as, *Usus magister egregius.*—PLIN. *Vita rustica parsimoniae magistra est.*—CIC.

D. 1. The Relative (§ 91) may refer to any Noun-term of any Person, as *ego, nos, tu, vos, &c.* 2. It may be explained as standing between two Noun-terms, with the former of which it agrees in Gender, Number, and Person, with the latter in Case: as,

- (1) *Vir quem virum vides rex est* (Full Form).
- (2) *Vir quem . . . . . vides rex est* (Usual Form).
- (3) *. . . quem virum vides rex est.*
- (4) *. . . quem . . . . . vides rex est.*

E. Figures varying Agreement (§ 158-160) are:—

1. Ellipsis, which omits words: (1) Pronouns, as *Aiunt, they say*: (2) Substantives, as *Falernum, Falernian* (*vinum, wine*), *gelida* (*aqua cold water*); *Ad Junonis, to Juno's* (*templum, temple*). (3) Verbs, especially the Copula *est, sunt.* See § 158.

The opposite of Ellipsis is Emphasis, which throws stress on words: as, *Ego reges eieci, vos tyrannos introducitis, I expelled kings, ye are bringing in tyrants.*—LIV.

2. Attraction, which removes Agreement from the usual word to some other: as, *Amantium irae amoris integratio est, the quarrels of lovers are the renewal of love.*—TER.; where *est* agrees with the Complement *integratio*, not with the Subject *irae*.

3. Synesis, which occurs when words have one Gender or Number in form, another in meaning, and when the construction is made to agree with the meaning: as, *Capita conjurationis securi percussi sunt, the heads of the conspiracy were decapitated.*—LIV. *Pars epulis onerant mensas, part load the tables with viands.*—VIRG. Singular Nouns with Plural sense, as *pars, juventus, turba, multitudo, nobilitas, plebs, populus, civitas, vulgus, &c.*, are called *Collectiva, Collective Nouns, or Nouns of Multitude.*

F. 1. A Composite Subject (§ 92) is one which contains two or more Noun-terms. The rule holds good, whether the Nouns are linked by Conjunctions, or without Conjunctions (by *Asyndeton*), or united by the Preposition *cum*. So, *Remo cum fratre Quirinus jura dabunt, Quirinus with his brother Remus will give laws.*—VIRG.

2. A Singular Verb may be used with a Composite Subject when the Nouns form one notion: as, *Senatus populusque intelligit.*—CIC.

3. The Verb may agree with one of the Nouns, and be understood with the others: as, *Convicta est Messalina et Silius, Messalina was convicted, and Silius.*—TAC.

4. As the first Person is prior to the second, and the second to the third, so the Masculine Gender is held in Grammar superior to the Feminine. (1. 2.)

G. Upon Impersonal Verbs, see § 157, also § 75, &c.



## II. CASES OF SUBJECT AND COMPLEMENT. § 93-94.

A. It is commonly stated that 'Copulative Verbs, Finite or Infinite, have the same Case after as before them;' but this is true only of an Attributive or Appositive Complement. The Complement may be a Phrase in an Oblique Case with or without a Preposition, or it may be an Adverb, and then the rule here cited will fail. Rule § 93 (2) may be given for every Nominative Complement; and the use of the term Complement always implies that the Verb of the sentence in question is either *esse* or some other Copulative Verb, Finite or Infinite. See § 87 D. Rules § 94 refer to the important construction of Accusative-and-Infinite in *Enunciatio Obliqua*, on which see X. (1).

B. The Verb *sum* may be completely Prepositional, not Copulative, if it denotes absolute existence: as, *Jam segetes sunt, ubi Troja fuit, now corn is, where Troy was.*—OV.

## III. THE ACCUSATIVE CASE. § 95-103.

A. When the Verb is Transitive (§ 96), the construction is often without sense until a word is added to express that on which the Verb acts. This is called the Object (or Nearer Object), and stands in the Accusative Case. Thus *Romulus condidit, Romulus founded*, is incomplete in sense until we add *Romam, Rome*. Transitive Verbs may be called *Quid-Verbs*. How to change a Transitive Active Sentence into Passive form, see XIV. E. 1.

B. (1) Transitive Verbs are sometimes used intransitively; as, *Jam verterat fortuna, fortune had now turned.*—LIV. (2) More often Intransitive Verbs become transitive: as, *Flet necem filii, he weeps for his son's death.* (3) The Compound of an Intransitive Verb is often transitive: as, *Hostes urbem circumsedent, the enemies surround the city.* (4) Passive Verbs used reflexively sometimes become transitive, like Deponents: as, *Exuitur cornua, she puts off her horns.*—OV. Hence such constructions as *Nodo sinus collecta fluentes, having gathered up in a knot her flowing folds.*—VIRG.

C. The Verbs which take double Accusative (thing and person) (§ 98) are *doceo* (and its compounds), *rogo*, *interrogo*, *oro*, *exoro*, *posco*, *flagito*, *percontor*, and, in Horace, *laccio*. Sometimes *celo*, *conceal*. They may be called *Quem-Quid Verbs*. In Passive construction the Accusative of the thing remains: *Quid tu docearis a me litteras? why should you be taught letters by me?*

D. *Factitive* or *Quid-Quale Verbs* (§ 99) such as may be said to *make* (*facere*) a thing to be of a certain character, by deed, word, or thought: as, (1) *facio*, *efficio*, *reddo*, *praesto*, *creo*, *lego*, *eligo*, &c.; (2) *dico*, *voco*, *memoro*, *praedico*, *annuo*, *nuncupo*, *declaro*, *usurpo*, *appello*, *saluto*, &c.; (3) *testimo*, *numero*, *credo*, *existimo*, *puto*, *duco*, *judico*, *habeo*, *censeo*, *agnosco*, *invenio*, *reperio*, *deprehendo*, &c., &c. They are the Active forms of those which in the Passive are Copulative Verbs. In their construction *esse* may be mentally supplied between the Object and Complement. *Factitive Construction* in the Passive becomes Copulative: *Fis dea a nobis, Fortuna: A Romulo urbs sua Roma vocata est.*

*E.* The Accusative of Respect or Nearer Definition (100) is seldom used in prose, except when it contains Pronominal or semi-adverbial expressions: as, *Illud doleo*; *Hoc laetor*; *Cetera assentior Crasso*, *in other things I agree with Crassus.*—CIC.

*F.* (1) Many Grammarians deem the original force of the Accusative Case to be, that it marks the limit or object of motion. § 101. (2) The Prepositions *in*, *ad*, are generally used by prose writers, if motion to other places than towns or small islands is mentioned.

#### IV. THE DATIVE CASE. § 104–109.

*A.* Words whose sense is incomplete without reference to a Recipient (105) are called Trajective. Thus *carus*, *dear*, necessarily implies, *dear to some one*; *dare*, *to give*, necessarily implies not only a thing given, but a person to whom it is given. Trajective words take a Dative of this object of reference. Verbs of this sort, if they take a Dative only (as *parco*, *faveo*, *irascor*, &c.), are purely Trajective or Cui-Verbs: if they take an Accusative also, they are Trajective-Transitive, or Cui-Quid Verbs, as *do*, *narro*, *spondeo*, &c.

*B.* The fundamental notion of the Dative (§ 106) seems to be Nearness, with its opposite Remoteness. The First Class, then, of Trajective words is composed of those which contain the ideas of *nearness* and *remoteness*, *presence* and *absence*, *affinity* and *non-affinity*, *custom* and *strangeness*, *fitness* and *unfitness*, *likeness* and *unlikeness*, *agreement* and *disagreement*, *union* and *disunion*, *comparison* and *contrast*. Next, *showing* and *being shown* is the bringing near or being brought near to the eye, ear, or (generally) to the mind. Herein we include the Second Class, words of *utterance* and *silence*, *narration* and *concealment*, *affirmation* and *denial*, *evidence* and *obscurity*, *persuasion* and *dissuasion*. We are hence led on to the Third Class, a large body of words which express application or exhibition with the attendant notion of *favour* or *disfavour*. These comprise words which express *profit* and *harm*, *kindness* and *unkindness*, *bounty* and *stint*, *indulgence* and *grudging*, *help* and *obstruction*, *pleasing* and *displeasing*, *pardon* and *resentment*, *flattery* and *reviling*, *blessing* and *malediction*, *compliance* and *resistance*, *promise* and *menace*, *gift*, *loan*, *present*, *payment*, *dedication*, and *refusal*; *delivery* and *withdrawal*; *faith* and *infidelity*, *trust* and *distrust*, *lawfulness* and *unlawfulness*, *ease* and *difficulty*. There are yet a few words, which share something of the character of both the two last-mentioned classes, and may conveniently form a Fourth Class. These are words which express *rule* and *subservience*, *command* and *obedience*.

*C.* The reason why many Verbs compounded with Particles (106 *a.*) become Trajective, is, that the Particle confers upon them one or other of the notions enumerated above: most frequently that of Nearness.

*D.* The reason why a *Dativus Commodi* vel *Incommodi* (107) may be attached to almost any predication, is, evidently because almost any action or state may be attended with something of *advantage* or *disadvantage* to some one; it may be *for* or *against* some one's interest; it may be in some way *interesting* to some one. Thus *nubere* means 'to take the bridal veil,' and a bride is said, '*nubere viro*,' 'to take the veil for her husband,' that is, 'to marry him.' *Vacare* means 'to be void,' or 'empty:' hence, 'to be disengaged *for*,' that is, 'to have leisure *for*:'

as, vacare philosophiae. Such constructions are far-fetched examples of the Trajectiva Gratiae. Here, too, may be ranked the Dativus Ethicus, the Dative with sum and its compounds, with Participles, Gerunds, &c. and perhaps the Dativus Rei pro Complemento.

*E.* Some Adjectives in the classes named prefer the construction of ad with Accusative to that of the Dative: such are natus, aptus, utilis, idoneus, paratus, rudis, &c. as, Ad laudem et ad decus natī sumus, *we are born to praise and glory*.—CIC. Others use in, erga, adversus: as, Acer in hostem, *spirited against the foe*.—VIRG. Benignus erga te fui, *I was kind towards you*.—PLAUT. Communis, proprius, affinis, similis, par, and some other Adjectives, take a Dative or a Genitive Case.

*F.* Some Verbs belonging in sense to the classes named above (*B*) are Quid-Verbs, not Cui-Verbs, and take Accusative and not Dative: as, juvo, jubeo, laedo, rego, gubernō. Multos castra juvant, *the camp delights many*. Animum rege, *rule the temper*.—HOR. Others use Dative or Accusative: as, tempero, moderor. The construction of Verbs varies considerably, owing to the use of Prepositions and other causes. Thus we find donare alicui munus and donare aliquem munere, invidere alicui, invidere rem alicui, invidere re aliquem. These varieties must be observed in reading.

*G.* The English Prepositions chiefly used in rendering the Latin Dative are *to* and *for*. But after some Adjectives and Verbs (*iratus, succenseo, &c.*) *with* must be used; after some Verbs (*disto, aufero, &c.*), *from*; after many Compound Verbs, *upon, into, or against*. Others, as *parco, placeo, displiceo, medeor, &c.*, are rendered without introducing an English Preposition.

*H.* The Dative after a Finite Passive Verb is rare: as, Non intelligor ulli, *I am not understood by anybody*.—OV. So is the Dative after a Verb of motion: as, It clamor caelo, *a cry ascends to heaven*.—VIRG.

#### V. THE ABLATIVE CASE. § 110–125.

*A.* When the Ablative stands without a Latin Preposition, it is rendered with the help of various English Prepositions; namely, I. Cause, *by, for, from, through, with, at*. II. Instrument, *with, by*. III. Manner: *in, with, by*. IV. Condition: *with, in, upon*. V. Quality: *of, with*. VI. Respect, *in, by, with*. VII. Value or Price: *at, for, of, with*. VIII. Measure: *by*, or no Preposition. IX. Matter: *of, in, with, from, upon, for*, or no Preposition. X. Time: *at, in, within, or no Preposition*. XI. *A.* Place by which: *by, along, upon, through*. *B.* Place where: *at, in, upon* (*humi*). *G.* Place from which: *from*. XII. (See Prepositions). XIII. Separation and Origin: *from, of*. XIV. Thing compared: *than*.

*B.* The use of the Simple Ablative in most of these meanings is varied considerably by the introduction of Latin Prepositions. Thus Cause may be expressed by *ab, de, ex, prae*; also by *ob, per, propter*, with Accusative. Agent requires *a, ab*; while Instrument is without Preposition. Manner without an Epithet requires ‘*cum*,’ (except in a few phrases, such as, *vi, fraude, jure, injuriā, ritu, silentio, arte, ordine, &c.*). Thus, *I speak with grief*, or *he writes with diligence*, cannot be rendered *dolore loquor, diligentia scribit*, but *cum dolore loquor* (or *dolens loquor*), *cum diligentia scribit* (or *diligenter scribit*).



If an Epithet is joined to this Ablative, the Preposition is often used, often omitted; and observation must determine the choice of construction: as, *Cato summā contentione dixit, Cato spoke with the utmost energy.*—CIC. *Magnā cum curā atque diligentia scripsit, he wrote with great care and diligence.*—CIC.

C. The Case of Quality, whether Ablative or Genitive, requires an Epithet.

D. The Ablative of Price is used with Verbs and Adjectives implying sale, purchase, dearness, cheapness, cost, &c. *Muto, I change*, may have Accusative of what is left, and Ablative of what is taken, or (in poetry) the converse. Thus *mutare urbem exilio*, and *mutare urbe exilium* may equally mean 'to quit the city and go into banishment.' *Pretio* is often dropt: as, *magno, dear*; *parvo, vili, cheap*.

E. The Ablative of Measure defines Verbs and Adjectives of Extent and Degree, especially Comparative and Superlative Words: and for this purpose in particular are used the Pronominal Ablatives *hoc, eo, quo, altero, tanto, quanto, aliquanto*: also *paulo, multo, duplo, dimidio, nihilo, nimio, &c.*: as, *Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt, the more they have, the more they desire*.

F. The use of Prepositions in defining Time (§ 120) is frequent: as, *Sol binas in singulis annis reversiones facit, the sun makes two turns in each year.*—CIC. *De die, before the close of day.* *De nocte, before the close of night.* *De multā nocte, long before the close of night.* *Sub vesperum, on the approach of evening.* *Diem ex die expecto, I wait day after day.* In is usually prefixed to an Ablative of time when a numerical Adverb is annexed: as, *Quidam oves in anno bis tondent, some shear sheep twice a year.*—VARR.

G. 1. Generally *Place where* (§ 121 B.) is expressed with *in*: as, *In portu navigo, I am sailing in harbour.*—SEN. In is omitted in certain phrases: as, *loco (in the stead), multis locis, pluribus locis, &c.*; *hoc libro, alio libro, &c.*; *terrā marique*; or where *totus* is used: as, *totā Asiā, in all Asia, dextrā (parte), on the right hand, laevā, sinistrā, on the left hand.* The poets are more free in the omission: as, *Silvisque agrisque viisque corpora foeda jacent, in forests and fields and roads, lie revolting corpses.*—OV. But this licence needs discrimination. When a work is quoted *in* is used: as, in *Iliade Homeri*; in *Andriā Terentii*; in *Gorgiā Platonis*; but when the author only is cited, *apud*; *apud Homerum*; *apud Terentium*; *apud Platonem (in Homer, &c.)*.

2. That the seeming Genitive, *Romae, Corinthi, &c.*, (§ 121 B. a.) is not strictly such, was perceived by ancient Grammarians, who call it an Adverb. But if we notice that it ends in *i*, *Romai (Romae), militiæ (militiæ) Mileti, domi, humi, belli*; and compare the old forms of place in the Third Declension ending in *i*, *ruri, Lacedaemoni*—NEP.; *Carthagini*—LIV.; *Tiburi*—CIC., &c.; we cannot doubt the original existence in the Latin language, as in the Sanskrit, of a Locative Case ending in *i* Singular, in *s* Plural.

3. Prepositions are much used with names of towns: as, *In Epheso est. In Ephesum abii. Ex Epheso huc litteras misi, I sent a letter to this place from Ephesus.*—PLAUT. *Has litteras a Brundisio dedit, this letter he dated from Brundisium.*—CIC.

H. The usage of Verbs and Participles of Separation and Origin (§ 123) must be carefully observed, some of them taking or omitting the Preposition in prose: as, arceo, cedo, moveo, pello, prohibeo, summoveo, removeo: others requiring a Preposition in prose, but not in poetry; as, alieno, discedo, disjungo, dispello, disto, divello, repello, reporto, rejicio, segrego, secerno, separo, &c. The chief Participles are natus, prognatus, satus, cretus, creatus, editus, oriundus, &c.

K. 1. The Case of the word with which the Ablative is compared (§ 124) is much oftener a Nominative than an Accusative. In comparison with other cases quam must be used: as, Nulli flebilior quam tibi, Vergili, *to none more a cause of weeping than to thee, Vergilius.*—HOR. Flagiti magis nos pudet quam erroris, *we are more ashamed of the crime than of the blunder.*—CIC. And, in general, for the sake of perspicuity: as, Segnius homines bona quam mala sentiunt, *men feel blessings less keenly than evils.*—LIV.

2. After plus, amplius, minus, an ellipse of quam often occurs before Numerals: as, Romani paulo plus sexcenti ceciderunt, *of the Romans rather more than 600 fell.*—LIV. Unus is omitted: as, Quinctius tecum plus annum vixit, *Quinctius lived with you more than a year.*—CIC.

L. 1. The Ablative Absolute (§ 125) being an abridged Clause, the Participle may often be transformed into a Finite Verb with Conjunction. Thus, in the example, Regibus exactis = postquam reges exacti sunt.

2. A common instance of Substantive put Absolutely with Substantive is that of *consule* or *consulibus*: as, Caninio consule scito neminem prandisse, *in the consulship of Caninius you must know that nobody dined.*—CIC.

## VI. THE GENITIVE CASE. § 126-136.

A. 1. The Genitive is Subjective when it limits a Noun like an Attribute; Objective when it limits it like an Object. It is the same thing to say, Sullanus exercitus, or Sullae exercitus, *the army of Sulla*; flamen Martialis, or flamen Martis, *the priest of Mars*; on the other hand, cupido pecuniae is nearly the same as cupere pecuniam. But Adjectives are even used for the Objective Genitive: as, bellum regium for bellum contra regem; timor externus for timor exterorum. So the Possessive Pronouns; as, Desiderium vestrum ferre non possum, *I cannot bear the want of you.*—CIC. 'Native of a place' is expressed by an Adjective derived from the place: as, Dionysius Halicarnasæus, for Dionysius Halicarnassi natus, *Dionysius of Halicarnassus.*

2. The Possessive Genitive is rendered in English either by *of* or the Genitive in 's': as, Philippi filius, 'son of Philip,' or 'Philip's son.'

3. Instar (an undeclined Substantive meaning *likeness*) stands (with a Genitive) in apposition to a Substantive: as, Instar montis equum, *a horse resembling a mountain.*—VIRG.

B. (1) Some suppose interest to be for inter rem est, rēfert for rem fert, and mea, &c., to be corruptions of meam, &c. (§ 129). (2) These Verbs may be qualified by the Genitives of Value, magni, parvi, pluris, tanti, quanti: as, Utriusque nostrum magni interest ut te videam, *it is of great importance to both of us that I see you.*—CIC.



C. 1. The Genitivus Rei Distributæ (§ 130) and Genitivus Rei Deænsæ (§ 131) are so far the same, as that each is a divided whole; but the former is numerically or quotatively divided, the latter quantitatively: the former is Plural unless it be a Collective Noun; the latter usually, but not always, Singular. The Partitive words which distribute the former Genitive are (α) Pronominals: as, alius, alter, iter, uterque, utervis, uterlibet, ullus, nullus, nemo, plerique, multi, pauci, ceteri, reliqui, solus, qui, quis, quicumque, quisquis, quisque, unusquisque, tot, quot, quicumque, quotusquisque, quisnam, quisquam, aliquis, quidam, quispiam, &c. (β) Numerals, Cardinal and Ordinal: unus, primus: duo, secundus, &c.; also princeps, medius. (γ) Comparative and Superlative Adjectives; the former distributing two things: as, Major Neronum; or one class into two parts: as, Avium loquaciores, *the noisier sort of birds*.—PLIN. Also Superlative Adverbs, in which Gender cannot appear. (δ) Any Adjective, Participle, or Substantive which can imply a distributive meaning: as, Sancte deorum; lecti juvenum; piscium feminae.

2. Partitives are sometimes attracted in Gender from the Genitive to the Subject: as, Indus est omnium fluminum maximus, *the Indus is the largest of all rivers*.—CIC. Or varied by Synesis: as Dulcissime rerum, *dearest of beings*.—HOR.

3. A Collective Noun is distributed: as, Plato totius Graeciae doctissimus fuit, *Plato was the most learned man of all Greece*.—CIC.

4. This Genitive forms a Complement: as, Fies nobilium tu quoque fontium, *thou too shalt become one of the renowned fountains*.—HOR.

5. Adverbs of Place, ubi, quo, eo, nusquam, &c. are Partitively used with the Genitives gentium, locorum, terrarum, &c.: as, Nusquam gentium, *nowhere in the world*.—LIV.

6. Primus, ultimus, summus, imus, extremus, and other like Adjectives are used as Epithets with Partitive force: as, Primā luce summus mons a Labieno tenebatur, *at break of day the top of the mountain was occupied by Labienus*.—CAES.

D. Among Quantitative words governing a Genitive (§ 131) are, nihil, satis, affatim, abunde, nimis, partim, minus, minimum, parum, aliud, id, illud, hoc, idem, quod, quid, aliquid, quidquid, quidquam, multum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, aliquantum, nimium, dimidium. They are usually rendered in English as agreeing with the thing measured: as, nimium pecuniae (*too much money*); nihil mali (*no evil*). They may also be followed by the Genitive of an Adjective of the Second Declension; but an Adjective of the Third is commonly put in the same Case with the word of Quantity: as, Ne quid falsi dicere audeas, ne quid veri non audeas, *you should dare to say nothing false, nothing true not dare to say*.—CIC. Nec viget quicquam simile aut secundum, *and nothing exists like or in second rank*.—HOR.

E. Among poetic Genitives (§ 135) are these: (1) Cause: as, Laudabat leti juvenem, *he praised the young man for his death*. (2) Respect: as, O seri studiorum, *O late in your studies*. (3) Dominion: as, Daunus agrestium regnavit populorum, *Daunus ruled over rustic tribes*, &c.

## VII. THE VERB INFINITIVE. § 140-144.

A. The Infinitive used in direct predication (§ 140, 2.) is called the Historic Infinitive. It appears in poetry as well as in prose narrative, (a) in passages descriptive of strong emotion; (b) where various actions take place simultaneously or in immediate sequence; (c) in actions interrupted, and from time to time repeated. It is analogous to the ellipse of the Copula; in fact, both constructions occur together: as, *Ceterum facies totius negoti varia, incerta, foeda atque miserabilis; dispersi a suis pars cedere, alii insequi: neque signa neque ordines observare: ubi quemque periculum ceperat, ibi resistere ac propulsare; arma, tela, equi, viri, hostes, cives permixti; nihil consilio neque imperio agi; fors omnia regere, now the aspect of the whole affair was confused, indecisive, shocking, and pitiable. Parties scattered from their comrades were some retiring, others advancing; observing neither standards nor ranks; where peril encountered each man, there was he resisting and repelling; arms, darts, steeds, men, foes, countrymen were intermingled; nothing was proceeding by counsel or command; chance directed all.*—SALL. This Infinitive is not Present, but Imperfect.

B. 1. The Infinitive is called Prolative when it carries on the construction of Verbs which express *ability, desire, custom, beginning, ceasing, seeming, being thought, being said, &c.*; as, *possum, queo, nequeo, debeo, volo, nolo, malo, aveo, cupio, gestio, amo, soleo, coepi, incipio, statuo, pergo, conor, meditor, paro, cesso, desino, videor, putor, credor, feror, dicor, trador, memoror, &c.* Among these Verbs, those which are Copulative (*videor, credor, existimor, putor, dicor, narror, feror, trador, reperi, arguor, &c.*) are used personally with a Prolative Infinitive rather than impersonally with Accusative and Infinitive. Thus it is better Latin to say, *Videtur errasse Cicero*, than *Videtur errasse Ciceronem*; *Dicitur Homerus caecus fuisse*, than *Dicitur Homerum caecum fuisse*. The Participle Passive is often found in poetry after such Verbs with an ellipse of *esse*: as *Fertur Prometheus coactus, &c., Prometheus is said to have been compelled, &c.*—HOR. The law of this construction should be carefully observed.

2. The construction of a Prolative Infinitive with Adjectives abounds in poetry, especially lyric; as, *Audax omnia perpeti, bold to endure all things.*—HOR. *Fruges consumere nati, born to consume the fruits.*—HOR. In the best prose it is used but with few words; as, *Paratus, assuetus, &c.*; but Tacitus adopts it freely.

C. Under the Dative Gerund (§ 141, 3.) note the phrase, *non esse solvendo, to be insolvent*; and the use of the Dative Gerund and Gerundive in describing functions of office; as, *Triumviri agro dando, triumvirs for assigning land, &c.*

D. The Transitive Gerund is not always attracted (§ 143): as, *Efferor studio patres vestros videndi, I am rapt with the desire of seeing your sires.*—CIC. Especially when a Neuter Pronoun or Adjective is the Object: as, *Pars honesti versatur in tribuendo suum cuique, one branch of morality lies in giving each his own.*—CIC. *Parva non contemnendo majores nostri maximam hanc rem fecerunt, by not despising small things our ancestors made this commonwealth very great.*—LIV. But, as a general rule, the Gerundive attraction is used.

## VIII. THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS. § 145.

A. Personal and Possessive Pronouns of the First and Second Persons may be used reflexively; that is, they may be referred to a Subject of *their own* Person. But *se* and *suus* differ from the rest, inasmuch as they cannot be used unless there be a Noun of their own (the Third) Person, expressed or understood, to which they are referred. Although we can say *amat me, he loves me; amat te, he loves thee*; we cannot say, *amo se, amas se, but amo eum, I love him; amas eum, thou lovest him; not culpo suum factum, but culpo ejus factum, I blame his deed.*

B. The reference of *se* or *suus* to the Object is not ambiguous (a) if the Pronoun is an adjunct to the Subject, as in the first and third examples under § 145, a.; (b) if the Subject is not of the Third Person, as in the second example; (c) if the context shows that the Pronoun cannot be referred to the Grammatical Subject: as, *Scipio suas res Syracusanis restituit, Scipio restored to the Syracusans their property.*—LIV. To suppose that Scipio restored his own property to the Syracusans would be absurd. The Object to which *se, suus, are* referred, usually precedes: except the Distributive Pronoun *quisque*, which, if so used, generally follows them. So, *Sui cuique mores fingunt fortunam, his own character moulds each man's fortune.*—NEP. When *se, suus,* would be improper, in some places is used the Pronoun *is*, in others the Pronoun *ipse*: as, *Chilius te rogat, et ego ejus rogatu, Chilius requests you and I at his request.*—CIC. *Caesar milites inculpavit cur de suā virtute et de ipsius diligentia desperarent, Caesar reproachfully asked his troops why they despaired of their own valour and of his carefulness.*—CAES.

## IX. THE CONJUNCTIVE MOOD. § 148.

The Indicative Mood states absolutely, the Conjunctive contingently. The Conjunctive is called *pure* when it is in the predication of a principal Sentence. Its *pure* uses are various:

- (1) Potential: as, *Ita amicos pares, thus you may get friends.*  
*Dixerit aliquis, some one may say.*
- (2) Conditional: „ *Velim tecum esse, I should wish to be with you.*  
*Crederes victos, you would have supposed them vanquished.*
- (3) Concessive: „ *Age dicat, well, he may speak.*  
*Fuerit sapiens, suppose he were wise.*
- (4) Optative: „ *Valeant cives mei, may my countrymen flourish!*  
*Ne vivam si, &c., may I not live if, &c.*
- (5) Dubitative: „ *Faveas tu hosti? must you favor a foe?*  
*Quid faciam? what am I to do?*
- (6) Hortative: „ *Imitemur bonos, Let us imitate the good.*  
*Rem tuam curares, you should have been minding your own business.*

## X. SUBSTANTIVAL CLAUSES, AND DEPENDENCE ON ORATIO OBLIQUA. § 149-151.

I. Every Simple Sentence is either (1) a Statement (Enunc a (2) a Command or Request (P̄etitio), or (3) a Question (rogatio). As (1) *Psittacus loquitur, the parrot speaks.* (2) *Loquere,*



psittace, *speaks, parrot.* (3) *Loquitur* psittacus? *does the parrot speak?* When any of these is a Principal Sentence, it is said to be Direct (*Recta Oratio*); when it is a dependent Substantival Clause, it is said to be Oblique (*Obliqua Oratio*).

A Substantival Clause is one which may take the place of a Substantive (as Subject, Object, or Appositive), being (1) Oblique Enunciation, (2) Oblique Petition, (3) Oblique Interrogation.

(1) The principal form which Oblique Enunciation takes is the Accusative and Infinitive (§ 94.), which is either Subject of the Copula *est* or an Impersonal Verb, or Object of one of the *Verba Sentiendi et Declarandi*. Grammatical writers sometimes have this construction alone in view when they use the term *Oblique Oration*: but incorrectly; for it is but one, though the most important, form of *Oblique Oration*. As, *Facinus est vinciri civem Romanum, it is a crime for a Roman citizen to be put in chains.*—Cic. *Thales dixit aquam esse initium rerum, Thales said that water is the origin of the universe.*—Cic.

Constructions used for the Accusative and Infinitive are:

a. *Ut*, with Subjunctive, in Oblique Enunciation, implies *consequence, expediency, duty, necessity, custom, law, &c.* *Quod*, with Indicative (usually), implies *fact*: as,

*Mea refert ut venias, It is important to me that you come.*

*Necesse est (ut) venias, You must needs come.*

*Oportet (ut) venias, You ought to come.*

*Expedit } ut civitates sua jura habeant.*

*Utile est } It is expedient (useful) that the states have their rights.*

*Gaudemus } quod civitates sua jura habent.*

*Gratum est } We are glad that the states have their rights.*

b. Verbs of *hoping* and *promising* prefer the Accusative with Future Infinitive: as,

*Spero te venturum (esse), I hope that you will come.*

*Pollicetur se venturum (esse), he promises that he will come.*

c. After expressions of *fearing, danger, &c.*, *ne* means *lest*, *ut* *lest not*: as,

*Metuo ne redeat, I fear lest he return (=I fear he will return).*

*Metuo ut redeat, I fear lest he return not (=I fear he will not return).*

d. *Interrogatio Infinitiva* (or Accusative and Infinitive interrogatively used with ellipse of Finite Verb) asks an indignant question: as,

*Mene incepto desistere? What, I abandon my design?*

(2) Oblique Petition is formed when *ut*, *ne*, depend on Verbs of *entreating, commanding, forbidding, allowing, persuading, caring, endeavouring, effecting, preventing, &c.*: as, *Oro ut venias; Cura ut valeas; Vide ne facias; Enitendum est ut vincamus, ne vincamus, &c. Fieri non potest ut veniam, I cannot possibly come. Ut and ne are often omitted: as, Precor reddas; fac venias; cave dicas; licet abeas, &c.*

(3) Oblique Interrogation is formed by Interrogatives dependent on Verbs of *stating, enquiring, &c.* § 149. Here too an Interrogative sometimes falls out: as, *Interrogatur, tria pauca sint anne multa, It is questioned whether three things are few or many.*—CIC.

II. A Clause dependent on Oblique Oration may be called Suboblique (Subobliqua). A Clause is virtually Suboblique (Subobliquae potestatis), if it depends on Oratio Recta so constituted as to be virtually Oblique, that is, containing the statement of somebody's thought, judgment, or declaration. Thus, in the Compound Sentence, '*Laudat Africanum Panaetius, quod fuerit abstinens,*' the Principal Sentence, *Laudat, &c.,* is virtually Oblique, and the Clause, *quod, &c.,* virtually Suboblique: the sense being *Panaetius praises Africanus (=says Africanus is to be praised) because he was self-denying.* Hence *fuerit* is Subjunctive, although the Conjunction *quod* is one of the Second Class, to which the Indicative is appropriate.

### XI. ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

A. An Adverbial Clause modifies the Principal Sentence like an Adverb, and is introduced by Conjunctions (1) Consecutive, (2) Final, (3) Causal, (4) Temporal, (5) Conditional, (6) Concessive, (7) Comparative. Lists of these Conjunctions appear § 152.

Examples of Subjunctive in Adverbial Clauses:

- (1) *Non tam amens est ut eat, He is not so mad as to go.*  
*Non ita amens fuit ut iret, He was not so mad as to go.*  
*Adeo prudens est ut non ierit, He is so prudent that he went not.*  
*Tam catus erat ut nihil diceret, He was so shrewd as to say nothing.*  
*Tam catus fuit ut nihil dixerit, He was so shrewd that he said nothing.*  
*Tantum abest ut Romae sit, ut in Britanniam ierit, He is so far from being at Rome, that he has gone to Britain.*  
*Tantum abfuit ut Romae esset, ut in Britanniam ivisset, He was so far from being at Rome, that he had gone to Britain.*
- (2) *Edo ut vivam, I eat that I may live.*  
*Vivebant ut ederent, They lived that they might eat.*  
*Obedi rationi ne servias appetitui, obey reason, that you may not be a slave to appetite.*
- (3) *Quae cum ita sint, ibo, Since this is the case, I will go.*  
*Quae cum ita essent, ivi, Since this was the case, I went.*
- (4) *Expecta dum veniam, Wait till I come.*  
*Expectabam dum venirent, I was waiting till they came.*
- (5) *Oderint dum metuant, Let them hate provided they fear.*
- (6) *Ut peccet, carus est, Though he sin, he is dear.*  
*Quamvis peccasset, carus erat, Though he had sinned, he was dear.*
- (7) *Obtundis tanquam surdus sim, You stun me as if I was deaf.*  
*Obtundebas quasi surdus essem, You stunned me as though I were deaf.*



B. Conditional Sentences require special notice.

A Conditional Sentence (*si, if; nisi, unless*) contains a Protasis or Conditional Clause, and an Apodosis (Statement or Principal Sentence): as, *If you like* (Protasis), *you shall go* (Apodosis).

Its main forms in Latin are these :

- |  |   |  |
|--|---|--|
| <p>I. Si peccas doles,<br/><i>If you sin you grieve.</i><br/>Si peccabis dolebis,<br/><i>If you sin you will grieve.</i></p>   | } | <p>Here both Verbs are Indicative, and no suggestion is made of probability or improbability (Sumptio Dati).</p>   |
| <p>II. Si pecces doleas,<br/><i>If you were to sin now, you would grieve; or, If you shall sin, you will grieve.</i></p>   | } | <p>Here both Verbs are Conjunctive Present, and there is a suggestion of probability (Sumptio Dandi).</p>  |
| <p>III. Si peccares, doleres,<br/><i>Were you to sin, you would grieve.</i><br/>Si peccasses, doluisses,<br/><i>If you had sinned, you would have grieved.</i><br/>Si peccasses, doleres,<br/><i>If you had sinned, you would (now) be grieving.</i></p> | } | <p>Here both Verbs are Conjunctive, either Imperfect or Pluperfect; and an imaginary case is suggested, which has not actually occurred (Sumptio Ficti).</p> |

In Oblique Oration these Sentences become :

- I. II. Aio te, si pecces, { dolere (for doles).  
                                  { doliturum esse.  
III. Aiebam te, si peccares, doliturum esse.  
      — — si peccasses, doliturum fuisse.

#### XII. ADJECTIVAL CLAUSES.

A. These are related to the Principal Sentence like Adjectives, and introduced by the Relative or one of its Particles. See Rule, § 150.

B. Quominus, quin, require special notice.

(1) Quominus (=ut eo minus) follows Verbs and Phrases expressing *impediment*. (2) Quin (=qui non) follows Negative expressions and Interrogations. (3) Quin (=quod non) follows Negative and Interrogative expressions of *doubt, prevention, prohibition, &c.* Examples:—

- (1) Nihil obstat quominus eam, *Nothing stops me from going.*  
Per me stetit quominus ires, *I was the cause of your not going.*
- (2) Quis est quin fleat? *Who is there but weeps?*  
Nemo fuit quin fleret, *There was none but wept.*
- (3) Nihil dubito quin gaudeant, *I have no doubt they rejoice.*  
Nihil dubitabam quin gauderent, *I had no doubt they rejoiced.*  
Quid causae est quin gaudeant? *What reason is there why they shall not rejoice?*

#### XIII. CONSECUTION OF TENSES.

A. Examples of Consecution (see those in XI., XII.).

- |  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| <p>Quaero<br/>Quaeram<br/>Quaerebam<br/>Quaesivi<br/>Quaesiveram</p> | } | <p>quid agas, quid egeris, quid acturus sis.<br/>quid ageres, quid egisses, quid acturus esses.</p> |
|--|---|---|

*B.* If the Perfect is Present-Past (*I have inquired*), it is strictly a Primary Tense, and should have Primary Consecution; but Cicero generally constructs it, even in that sense, with Historic Consecution.

XIV. ADDITAMENTA MEMORABILIA.

*A.* Negatives:—

*a.* Non, haud, deny: *nē* prohibits. Haud is chiefly used with Adjectives and Adverbs: as, *res haud dubia*; *haud temere*, &c. And with a few Verbs: as, *haud scio*, *haud dubito*.

*b.* Ne . . . quidem has the emphatic word or words between the Particles: as, *Ne tu quidem*, *not even you*. Either the Verb precedes with another Negative: as, *Non praetereundum est ne id quidem*, *even that should not be passed over*.—Cic.; or it follows without one: as, *Ne ad Catonem quidem provocabo*, *I will not appeal even to Cato*.—Cic. *Nēdum*, with Subjunctive, shows that something is denied a fortiori, when compared with what was denied before. See § 147.

*c.* The Pronominal words *quisquam*, *ullus*, *unquam*, *usquam*, &c., are used with a Negative or Dubitative Particle: as, *non*, *haud*, *si*, *num*, &c., *quisquam*, *ullus*, &c. The Negative is contained in *nemo* (*ne-homo*), *nullus* (*ne ullus*), *nunquam*, *nusquam*, *nequicquam*, *nequaquam*, &c.

*d.* In Negative Consecutive Clauses are used *ut non*, *ut nemo*, *ut nullus*, *ut nunquam*, *ut nusquam*, &c.; but in Final Clauses *ne*, *ut ne*, *ne quis*, *ut ne quis*, *ne quando*, *ut ne quando*, *ne quo*, *ut ne quo*, &c.

*e.* Non quod (generally), non quo, non quin (always), take a Subjunctive.

*f.* For *et nemo*, write *nec quisquam*; for *et nihil*, *neque quicquam*; for *et nullus*, *neque ullus*; for *et nunquam*, *neque unquam*, &c.; for *aio non*, *nego*.

*g.* *Neque* (*nec*) is used for *et non*, except when the negative emphasis falls on a single word: as, *Quaestio difficilis est et non profutura*.

*h.* *Non nihil*, *something*; *nihil non*, *everything*; *non nunquam*, *sometimes*; *nunquam non*, *always*, &c.; *non potui non ire*, *I could not but go*.

*B.* Single and Double Questions.

*a.* Single: *Nonnē* expects the answer *Yes*; *num*, the answer *No*; *-nē* is indifferent; *ñn* often implies *surprise*, expecting a negative answer.

*b.* Double. The forms are:

<i>utrum</i> . . . . .	<i>an</i> ( <i>or</i> )
<i>num</i> . . . . .	<i>an</i> ( <i>or</i> )
<i>-ne</i> . . . . .	<i>an</i> ( <i>or</i> )
— . . . . .	<i>an</i> , <i>anne</i> ( <i>or</i> ).

A negation in the second member is *annon* or *necne*.

*a.* *Qualis est tua mens? potesne dicere?* *What sort of thing is your mind? can you tell?*—Cic.

*An tu me tristem esse putas?* *Do you think I am downcast?*—PLAUT.

*Num negare audes?* *Do you venture to deny?*—Cic.

*Canis nonne similis lupo est?* *Is not a dog like a wolf?*—Cic.

*b.* *Haec utrum abundantis an egentis signa sunt?* *Are these the tokens of one who abounds or lacks?*—Cic.

Num duas habetis patrias an est illa patria communis? *Have you two countries, or is this your common country?*—CIC.

Romamne venio an hic maneo an Arpinum fugio? *Do I come to Rome, or stay here, or flee to Arpinum?*—CIC.

Quaeram justum sit necne poëma, *I will enquire whether it be a true poem or not.*—HOR.

### C. Prepositions :

a. Tenus follows its Case, which is often a Genitive : as, Tauro tenus, *as far as Mount Taurus*; nutricum tenus, *as far as the breasts*.

b. Ante, circa, circum, circiter, citra, extra, infra, intra, juxta, pone, post, prope, supra, ultra, clam, coram, palam, super, subter, may be used as Adverbs.

c. Among idiomatic Phrases formed by Prepositions, observe : (1) Ad : ad tempus, *for a time*; ad multam noctem, *till late at night*; ad unum, *to a man*; ad tibiam canere, *to sing to the flute*; ad hoc, *furthermore*; ad extremum, *at the last*; ad summum, *in fine*; ad verbum, *word for word*; ad unguem, *to a nicety*; ad amussim, *accurately*; ad decem annos, *ten years hence*; servi ad remum, *slaves for rowing*; ad iudices, *before the judges*; insignis ad laudem, *eminent in renown*; nihil ad te, *nothing compared with you*. (2) Per : per noctem, *during the night*; per litteras, *by letter*; per jocum, *in jest*; per deos te oro, *I pray you by the gods*; per me licet, *I give leave*; res per se expetenda, *a thing in itself desirable*. (3) A, ab : a fronte, *in the van*; a tergo, *in the rear*; a millibus passuum duobus, *two miles off*; prope abest a mari, *he is near the sea*; philosophus a Platone, *a Platonic philosopher*; hoc a me facit, *this is on my side*; proximus a rege, *next to the king*; ab animo aeger sum, *I am sick at heart*; a doctrinā instructus, *well informed*; servus a pedibus, *a footman*; a manu, *an amanuensis*. (4) De : de nocte, *in the night*; de die, *in the daytime*; de meo, *from my own purse*; de marmore, *of marble*; de more, *according to custom*; de industriā, *on purpose*; de novo, *afresh*; justis de causis, *for good reasons*; de Parthis triumphavit, *he triumphed over the Parthians*. (5) E, ex : diem ex die, *day after day*; ex pedibus laborat, *he has the gout in his feet*; e republica, *for the good of the state*; heres ex asse, *universal heir*; ex improviso, *by surprise*; ex tempore, *offhand*; e vestigio, *suddenly*; e regione Massiliae, *opposite Marseilles*. (6) Prae : prae me beatus es, *you are happy compared with me*; prae dolore tacet, *he is silent from grief*. (7) Pro : pro foribus, *before the door*; pro certo, *for a fact*; pro viribus, *according to one's powers*; pro tuā humanitate, *such is your courtesy*; pro re natā, *in existing circumstances*; pro eo ac potui, *according to my ability*. (8) In : α. frumentum binis assibus in modium, *corn at two asses a peck*; dormire in lucem, *to sleep till daylight*; vocat me ad cenam in hortos in proximum diem, *he invites me to dine the next day in his pleasure-grounds*; in hunc modum locutus est, *he spoke in this wise*; in praesens, *for the time being*; in horas, *from hour to hour*; in aeternum, *for ever*; in universum, *generally*; in vicem, *in turns*. β. in incerto, *in doubt*; in praesenti, *at this moment*; is in aere meo est, *he is in my debt*; hic non modo in aere alieno nullo, sed in suis numis multis est, *this man is not only out of debt, but has much ready money of his own*; filius in manu patris, *a son in his father's power*; in tuā manu hoc est, *this is in your power*.



## D. Participles:

a. The Participles are important elements in Latin, as in Greek, construction. But the Latin language is less rich in Participles than the Greek.

b. A Participle is the Attribute of one that acts, or has acted, or will act; of one that is being acted on, or has been acted on, or will be acted on: to which we must add, of one that is meet for being acted on. A Greek Verb regularly and fully conjugated has Participles (including the Verbal in *τέος*) representing all these categories; but Latin Verbs with Active and Passive Conjugation have the first, third, fifth, and seventh (the Present Act., Future Act., Perfect Pass., and Gerundive) Participles, but want the second, fourth, and sixth, that is, the Perfect Active, Present Pass., and Future Pass. Participles. For the Gerundive must not be regarded as Future, though it may in some places contain the notion of future time.

c. Deponent Verbs Intransitive have three Participles: Present and Future, both of which are Active in form and sense, and Perfect, which is Passive in form, but Active in sense: as, labor, labens, lapsurus, lapsus. To these, Transitive Deponents add the Gerundive in *dus*: as, patior, patiens, passurus, passus, patiendus.

d. The want of a Perfect Participle Act., in Active Verbs, is supplied in Latin either by the Finite Verb Active, with Relative or Particle, or by an Ablative Absolute Passive: as, Tarquinius regem qui non tulerim, Sicinius feram? *Having refused to endure Tarquin as king, shall I endure Sicinius?*—LIV. Alexander, quum interemisset Clitum, vix a se manus abstinuit, *Alexander, having slain Clitus, hardly refrained from suicide.*—CIC. Pompeius, captis Hierosolymis, victor ex illo fano nihil attigit, *Pompeius, having taken Jerusalem, in the very flush of victory, meddled with nothing belonging to that temple.*—CIC.

e. The want of a Present Participle Passive is supplied by the Finite Passive Verb with Relative or Particle: as, Pueri, qui—quum—dum locentur, discunt = Greek *οἱ παῖδες διδασκόμενοι μαθάνουσι*, *Children by being taught learn.* Rarely the Perf. Participle takes a Present Passive sense: as, Sperata victoria (LIV.) = victoria quae speratur.

f. A Future Participle Passive is not often used even in Greek. In Latin the Finite Verb with Relative stands for it: as, Grata superveniet quae non sperabitur hora, *Welcome will arrive the hour that shall be never hoped for.*—HOR.

g. The Perfect Participles of some Deponent and Semi-Deponent Verbs are occasionally found in a Present Active sense: as, ausus, fisus, diffisus, gavisus, ratus, solitus, usus, veritus: as, Cæsar, veritus ne noctu hostes profugerent, duas legiones in armis excubare jubet, *Cæsar, fearing the enemy would escape in the night, ordered two legions to keep watch under arms.*—CÆS. See § 62 Note.

h. Many Participles are used as mere Adjectives: as, negligens, patiens, sapiens, doctus, venerandus, tremendus, &c. Many appear as

Substantives. Such are, amans, adolescens, sponsus; nupta, sponsa, coeptum, dictum, factum, praeceptum, &c. The nouns, *man, men, thing, &c.*, are frequently to be understood with Participles: as, *Jacet corpus dormientis ut mortui, The body of a sleeping person often lies as of one dead.*—CIC. *Grande locuturi nebulas Helicone legunto, They that would utter a sublime strain must cull mists from Helicon.*—PERS. *Male parta male dilabuntur, Ill gotten, ill go.*—CIC. *Beatos duco, qui aut faciunt scribenda, aut scribunt loquenda, I deem them happy, who either do things fit to be written, or write things fit to be spoken.*—PLIN. See § 142. Also § 107 d.

*E.* Active and Passive Construction :

*a.* When an Active Transitive Sentence is changed into Passive Construction, the Object becomes Subject, and the Subject becomes Ablative of the Agent : as,

ACT. *Egregie consul rem gessit.*

PASS. *Egregie ab consule res gesta est.*

*The consul conducted the affair excellently.*—LIV.

*b.* When an Active Intransitive Sentence is changed into Passive Construction, that Construction is Impersonal; the Subject becoming Ablative of the Agent; as,

ACT. *Hostes constanter pugnabant.*

PASS. *Ab hostibus constanter pugnabatur.*

*The enemy fought steadily.*—CAES.

*c.* If the Active Verb had a Genitive, Dative, or Ablative Case with it, the Passive Construction retains that Case: as,

ACT. *Medicinae nos indigemus.*

PASS. *Medicinae a nobis indigetur.*

*We need medicine.*—CIC.

ACT. *Mihi isti nocere non possunt.*

PASS. *Mihi ab istis noceri non potest.*

*They cannot hurt me.*—CIC.

ACT. *Litibus et jurgiis supersedere vos aequum est.*

PASS. *Litibus et jurgiis supersederi aequum est.*

*It is fair for you to abandon strife and wrangling.*—LIV.

(*a*) The Ablative of the Agent, like a Pronoun Subject, is often understood in the Impersonal Construction; as, *Itur in antiquam silvam, They go into an ancient forest.*—VIRG. *Nunc est bibendum, Now we must drink.*—HOR.

(*b*) Hence it appears that Passive Verbs govern the same Cases as Active Verbs, except only the Accusative of the Object.

(*c*) Quasi-Passive Verbs (§ 72) have the construction of Verbs Passive; as, *Testis ab reo fustibus vapulavit, The witness was beaten with cudgels by the defendant.*—QUINT. *Malo a cive spoliari quam ab hoste venire, I would rather be stript by a citizen, than be sold by a foe.*—QUINT.

*F.* Summary of Impersonal Construction :

*a.* Case-construction.

(1) Accusative of Person with Genitive of Thing :

*Piget, pudet, paenitet, taedet, miseret.* § 134.



(2) Accusative of the Object :

Oportet, taedet, piget, pudet, paenitet, decet, dedecet, delectat, juvat, fallit, fugit, are Transitive.

(3) Dative :

Libet, licet, liquet, patet, accidit, contingit, convenit, evenit, expedit, placet, restat, vacat, opus est, necesse est, are Transitive.

(4) *Ad* with Accusative : attinet, pertinet, conducit.

b. Subject-construction.

(1) Verb-noun Infinitive :

Oportet, opus est, taedet, piget, pudet, paenitet, decet, dedecet, libet, licet, attinet, pertinet, contingit, convenit, expedit, placet, praestat, restat, vacat, delectat, juvat, interest, rēfert, necesse est.

(2) Infinitive Clause (Enunciatio Obliqua) :

Oportet, opus est, decet, dedecet, licet, liquet, patet, attinet, pertinet, accidit, contingit, convenit, placet, praestat, restat, juvat, fallit, fugit, interest, rēfert, constat, necesse est.

(3) Subjunctive Clause with *ut* (for Infinitive Clause) :

Oportet, opus est, licet, accidit, contingit, evenit, est, fit, expedit, placet, praestat, restat, interest, rēfert, necesse est.

(4) Subjunctive Clause omitting *ut* :

Oportet, licet, necesse est.

(5) Indicative Clause with *quod* (for Infinitive Clause) :

Piget, pudet, paenitet, taedet, miseret, accidit, delectat, juvat, fallit, fugit, interest, rēfert.

(6) Subject included in the meaning of the Verb :

Piget, pudet, paenitet, taedet, miseret : also Impersonals implying changes of season and weather : as, pluit, tonat, fulgurat, &c., and Passive Impersonals. See *E. b. c.*

(a) The following Deponent Perfects are occasionally used :

Pertaesum est ; pigitum est ; puditum est ; miseritum est ; libitum est ; licitum est ; placitum est.

(b) The following Verbs joined with Impersonal Infinitives become Impersonal : coepit, debet, desinit, potest, solet, incipit : as, *Pigere eum facti coepit, he began to be sorry for the act.*—JUST. *Perveniri ad summa, nisi ex principiis, non potest, the highest things cannot be reached, except from principles.*—QUINT.

G. Summary of Rules for Time, Place, and Space :

a. (1) Time *during* which :

Accusative ; Accus. with *per* ; rarely Ablative.

(2) Time *at* which, *within* which, &c. :

Ablative ; Prepositions with their Cases.

b. (1) Place *where* :

Ablative with *in* ; Accusative with *ad* or *apud*.

But if town, small island, or domus, humus, militia, bellum, rus :  
Singular Case in *ae, i* or *e*; Plural Case in *is* or *ibus*,  
without a Preposition: as, Romae, militiae, Corinthi,  
domi, humi, belli, ruri, Tibure, Athenis, Gadibus, &c.

(2) Place *whither* :

Accusative with *ad* or *in*.

But if town, small island, domus, rus, &c. :

Accusative without Preposition usually.

(3) Place *whence* :

Ablative with *ab* or *ex*.

But if town, small island, domus, rus, &c. :

Ablative without Preposition usually.

c. (1) Space intervening :

Accusative ; as, Aberam ab Amano iter unius diei, *I was one day's journey from Amanus.*—CIC.

Or Ablative of Measure ; as, Aesculapii templum quinque millibus passuum ab Epidaurō distat, *the temple of Aesculapius is five miles from Epidaurus.*—LIV.

(2) Space traversed :

Accusative ; as, Millia tum pransi tria repimus, *then after dining we creep on three miles.*—HOR.

(3) Space of measurement :

Accusative, § 102 ; or Ablative, § 118 ; or Genitive of Quality ; as, Areas latas pedum denum facito, *you must make barn-floors ten feet wide.*—COLUM.

### III. NOTES ON PROSODY.

METRE:—

A. (a) Dactylic Hexameter or Senarius.

This Metre has six feet. The first four may be Dactyls or Spondees. The fifth must be a Dactyl (rarely a Spondee). The sixth a Spondee.

*Scheme.*

1	2	3	4	5	6
- - -	- - -	- - -	- - -	- - -	- -

*Examples.*

1. Sicēlī|dēs Mū|sae || paū|lō mā|jōrā cā|nēmus.

2. Nōn ōm|nēs ār|būstā || jū|vānt hūm|lēsquē mŷ|rīcae.

A break in a word, called *Caesura*, is usually made after the first syllable of the third foot, as after *-sae*, in (1). This is called a *strong Caesura*. If the break occurs after the second syllable of a Dactyl, as after *-ta* in (2), it is called a *weak Caesura*. Occasionally,

the chief Caesura occurs after the first syllable of the fourth foot, as in the following verse :

Clāmō|rēs sĭmŭl | hōrrĕn | dōs || ād | sĭdĕrǎ | tōllit.

The Heroic Measure of Epic poets, Virgil, Lucan, &c., consists of Dactylic Hexameters only.

(b) Dactylic Pentameter :

This Verse consists of two parts, called Penthemimers, which are kept distinct. The first Penthemimer contains two feet (Dactyls or Spondees) and a long syllable. The second contains also two feet (both Dactyls) and a long syllable.

*Scheme.*

1                    2                    1                    2  
 - ∪ ∪ | - ∪ ∪ | - || - ∪ ∪ | - ∪ ∪ | -

*Example.*

Tū pătĕr | ĕt mǎ|tĕr || tū mĭhĭ | frătĕr ě|rās.

This Verse is not used alone, but follows an Hexameter in the Elegiac Distich: as,

Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos,  
 Tempora si fuerint nubila, solus eris.

The chief Elegiac poets are Ovid, Tibullus, and Propertius.

B. (a) Iambic Trimeter or Senarius :

This Metre has six feet. Each may be an Iambus: as,

Sūs | ĕt ĭp|sǎ Rō|mǎ vĭ|rĭbūs | rūit.

But a Spondee may stand in the first, third, and fifth foot; and (rarely) a Dactyl or Anapaest (∪ ∪ -) in the first. A Tribrach (∪ ∪ ∪) sometimes takes the place of an Iambus, except in the two last feet.

*Scheme.*

1                    2                    3                    4                    5                    6  
 ∪ -                ∪ -                ∪ -                ∪ -                ∪ -                ∪ -  
 - -                - -                - -                - -                - -                - -  
 ∪ ∪ ∪            ∪ ∪ ∪            ∪ ∪ ∪            ∪ ∪ ∪                                                   
 - ∪ ∪            - ∪ ∪            - ∪ ∪            - ∪ ∪                                                   
 ∪ ∪ -            ∪ ∪ -            ∪ ∪ -            ∪ ∪ -                                                 

*Examples.*

Lābūn|tŭr āl|tĭs || ĭn|tĕrĭm | rĭpĭs | āquae.  
 Cānĭdĭ|ǎ brĕvĭ|būs || ĭm|plĭcǎ|tǎ vĭ|pĕris.  
 Pōsītōs|quĕ vĕr|nās || dĭ|tĭs ĕx|āmĕn | dōmus.

The usual Caesura is after the first syllable of the third foot. Another, less usual, is after the first syllable of the fourth foot; as,

Ĭbĕ|rĭcĭs | pĕrūs|tĕ || fū|nĭbūs | lātus.

The Trimeter may form a distinct measure.

*(b) Iambic Dimeter.*

This Verse leaves out the third and fourth feet of the Trimeter, with which it is used to form an Iambic Distich; as,

Pătēr|nă rū|ră bō|bŭs ēx|ercēt | sŭis,  
Sölŭ|tŭs ōm|nī fe|nōre.

Horace uses this and also the single Trimeter in his Epodes.

*C. The Sapphic Stanza :*

This Stanza contains four lines. The three first are the same Verse repeated (Sapphicus Minor). The fourth is called Versus Adonius.

*Scheme.*

1.	- ∪	--	- ∪ ∪	- ∪	- ∪
2.	- ∪	--	- ∪ ∪	- ∪	- ∪
3.	- ∪	--	- ∪ ∪	- ∪	- ∪
4.			- ∪ ∪	- ∪	

*Example.*

1. Ōtī|ŭm dī | vōs rōgāt | ĩn pǎ|tēnti
2. Prēnsŭs | Aēgāē|ō sĭmŭl | ātrǎ | nŭbes
3. Cōndī|dīt lŭ|nām nēquē | cērtǎ | fŭlgent
4. Sĭdērǎ | nāūtis.

*D. The Alcaic Stanza :*

This Stanza contains four lines : of which the two first are similar.

*Scheme.*

1.	-- ∪ -	∪ -	-	- ∪ ∪	- ∪ ∪
2.	-- ∪ -	∪ -	-	- ∪ ∪	- ∪ ∪
3.	-- ∪ -	∪ -	--	∪ -	-
4.	- ∪ ∪	- ∪ ∪	- ∪	- ∪	

*Example.*

Ēheŭ | fŭgā|cēs | Pōstŭmě | Pōstŭme  
Lābŭn|tŭr ān|nī | nēc pĭ|tās mōram  
Rŭgīs | ět ĩn|stāntī | sēnēc|tae  
Affērēt | ĩndōmī | tāēquē | mōrti.

Models of the Sapphic and Alcaic Stanzas, with other Lyric Metres, are found in the Odes of Horace. Rules for their elegant construction are given in the Grammar.

## GLOSSARIUM GRAMMATICUM.



[N. E., Notes on Etymology. N. S., Notes on Syntax. N. P., Notes on Prosody. An Asterisk marks the new terms adopted in this Book.]

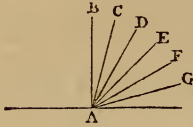
## A.

- Ablativus* (auferre, to take away), the Ablative Case, so called from one of its uses (Departure). § 110-125. See CASE.
- Absolutus Ablativus* (absolvere, to release), the Ablative Absolute, because it stands released, as it were, from government. § 125.
- Accusativus* (accusare, to accuse), the Accusative Case, because the accused is the *Object* of prosecution. Gr. αἰτιατικὴ πτῶσις. § 95.
- Activa Vox* (agere, to do), the Active Voice of Verbs, expresses 'doing.'
- Adjectivum*, Adjective (quod adjicitur Substantivo). Gr. ἐπίθετον, epithet. §§ 32, 87, 89.
- Adjectival Clauses*. N. S. xii.
- Adverbial Clauses*. N. S. xi.
- Adverbium*, Adverb, 'quia ad Verbum est' Gr. ἐπίρρημα. §§ 9, 37, 82.
- Alphabet*, the Letters of a language, from Alpha, Beta (A, B), the two first letters in Greek, § 1.
- \**Annexive Relation*, that by which one word is annexed to another, so as to take the same construction. § 146.
- Anomala*, Irregular Words, Gr. ἀνώμαλα (ἄ, not; ὄμαλος, even). §§ 25, 78.
- Apodosis* (ἀποδιδόναι, to render back), a Principal Sentence limited by a Clause called Protasis (προτείνειν, to stretch before). N. S. xi. B.
- Appositum* (apponere, to place beside), an Apposite, or Substantive placed beside another in Attributive relation. §§ 87, 90. See p. 2.
- Asyndeton* (ἄ, not, συνδέειν, to bind together), the annexing of words without a conjunction.
- Attractio* (attrahere, to draw to), a Figure of Syntax. § 159 N. S. i. E. 2.
- Attributive Relation*, the relation of an Attribute or Apposite to the words they qualify. This relation may be (1) Epithetic: as, Croesus dives; Croesus rex. (2) Attributively Enthetic (see *Enthesis*): as, Croesus, regum ditissimus, vincitur; Croesus, rex Lydorum, vincitur. (3) Adverbially Enthetic: as, Croesus non dives interiit; Croesus non rex interiit. (4) Complemental: as, Croesus fuit dives; Croesus fit rex. § 87.
- Attributum* (attribuere, to assign), Attribute; an Adjective assigned to qualify a Substantive. §§ 87, 89.



## C.

*Casus* (cadere, to fall), Case. Gr. πτώσις. *A.* By *Case* is meant the form given to a Noun or Pronoun in order to show the relation in which it stands to some other word in the sentence. Case (casus, from cado)



is, literally, a falling. Grammarians represented that form which a Noun takes when it is the Subject of a sentence, by an upright line, as AB, and likened the other forms to lines falling away from the perpendicular at various angles; as, AC, AD, AE, AF, &c. These they called *Cases*; and their series, the *declension*, *declining*, or *sloping down*, of the word. Afterwards, the Nominative or Subject case was called (with evident impropriety) *Casus Rectus*, the *Upright Case*, and the others (except the Vocative) *Casus Obliqui*, *Oblique Cases*; whereas the *Stem* (or *Crude-form*) of the word is more properly the upright line, and the several Cases, including the Nominative and Vocative, are branches deflecting from it. So, from the Stem *nuc-* (*walnut-tree*) the Cases are: N.V. *nuc-s* (= *nux*), Acc. *nuc-em*, G. *nuc-is*, D. *nuc-i*, Ab. *nuc-e*.

*B.* The Relations which Cases fail to express are supplied by Prepositions; and in the languages of modern Europe the use of Prepositions prevails, and Declension is comparatively rare. Thus the languages derived from Latin (Italian, French, Spanish, and Portuguese) have only one Case-form in each Number for Nouns; English, two; German, four; but the Possessive Case in English is of limited use, and German Declension is freely developed only in the Articles. Of the ancient Aryan tongues, Sanskrit had the six Latin Cases and two more, the Instrumental and the Locative. Greek had only five cases in use, discarding the Ablative, the functions of which it divides between the Genitive and the Dative; but it retains traces of the Instrumental and the Locative. Latin retains many fragments of the Locative Case, as shown here and there in this Grammar; while the Pronominal forms, *mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*, *nobis*, *vobis*, *ubi*, *ibi*, together with the Cases in *-bus*, appear to spring out of the primitive Instrumental Case, though in meaning they have lost all connection with it.

*C.* The primary force of the Cases is a much debated and still undecided question. Modern Grammarians have been inclined generally to explain it by relations of place and extent; and there is much speciousness in the theory which, taking the Nominative as the moving agent, regards the Ablative as the point which motion leaves, the Accusative as that to which it extends, and the Dative as the point of rest. But this theory fails to account for the Sanskrit and Latin Genitive; and against it may be urged that it assigns to the Ablative a place which in Greek is taken by the Genitive, and also that the Latin Ablative includes uses hardly consistent with that which is here stated to be its distinctive use. In this book classical usage has been followed, but without prejudice (it is hoped) to the future study of philosophical grammar.

*Causalis Clausula*, a Causal Clause; an Adverbial Clause introduced by *quod*, *quia*, *quum*, &c. § 152. N. S. XI.

- Character* (χαρακτήρ, *an impressed mark*), usually means the last letter of the Stem of an inflected word. § 11.
- Circumstantive Relation*, the relation in which a Word or Phrase stands to the Verb when it modifies it adverbially. Such is that of Adverbs, Prepositions with their Cases, the Ablative Case always, the Accusative Case often.
- Clausula* (claudere, *to inclose*), a Clause. This term is used to express any Subordinate Sentence. Co-ordinate Sentences are also called Clauses, but are not discussed in elementary Grammar. See *Enthesis*.
- Collectiva* (colligere, *to gather together*), Collective Nouns or Nouns of Multitude. N. S. I. E. 3.
- Comparativa Clausula*, a Comparative Clause: an Adverbial Clause introduced by quasi, tanquam, ut si, &c. § 152. N. S. XI.
- \**Complementum* (complere, *to complete*), the Complement, that which completes the construction of a Simple Sentence, when its Verb is the Copula or Copulative. §§ 87, 93. N. S. II.
- \**Compositum Subjectum*, a Composite Subject. § 92. N. S. I. F.
- Concessiva Clausula* (concedere, *to grant*), a Concessive Clause, an Adverbial Clause introduced by etsi, quamvis, &c. § 152. N. S. XI. A.
- Conditionalis Clausula* (conditio, *a condition*), the Protasis of a Conditional Sentence. § 152. N. S. XI. B.
- Congruentia* (congruere, *to agree*), Agreement. §§ 88–92.
- Conjugatio* (conjugare, *to yoke together*), the Flexion of Verbs. §§ 11, 48.
- Conjunctio* (conjugere, *to unite*), Conjunction. Gr. σύνδεσμος. §§ 85, 152.
- Conjunctivus Modus*, Conjunctive Mood; the Mood of contingent statement, used purely or subjunctively. §§ 42, 65, 148. N. S. IX.
- Consecutio Temporum* (consequi, *to ensue*), Consecution of Tenses. § 155. N. S. XIII.
- Consecutiva Clausula*, a Consecutive Clause; an Adverbial Clause denoting consequence, introduced by ut, so that. § 152. N. S. XI. A.
- Consonantes Litterae* (consonare, *to sound with*), Consonants. § 3.

SCHEME OF THE CONSONANTS.

	MUTES		LIQUIDS			SPIRANTS				DOUBLE
	Hard	Soft	Raque	Smooth	Nasal	Sibilant	Pure	Mixed	Semivowel	
GUTTURAL, or Throat sounds } }	c (k, q)	g	..	..	..	..	h	..	..	x
DENTAL, or Teeth sounds } }	t	d	r	l	n	s	..	..	j	z
LABIAL, or Lip sounds } }	p	b	..	..	m	..	..	f	v	

- Contractio* (contrahere, *to draw together*), the fusion of two vowels into one long one; as, fidei, fide.
- Copula* (link), any Finite form of the Verb sum, when incompletely Predicative, linking Subject and Complement. § 87. N. S. II.

*Copulativa Verba* (copulare, *to couple*), Copulative Verbs. § 87. N. S. I.  
 Besides Sum, they comprise the Verbs—forem, *might be*; fio, *become*; appareo, *appear*; existo, *stand forth*; evado, *turn out*; audio, *am called*; maneo, *remain*; nascor, *am born*; videor, *seem*; with some others: also, many Passives of a class of Verbs called Factitive (facere), because they contain the idea of *making*, by deed, thought, or word; such Passives are—efficior, *am made*; creor, *am created*; designor, *am marked out*; legor, deligor, *am chosen*; eligor, *am elected*; declaror, *am declared*; renuntior, *am proclaimed*; nominor, nuncupor, *am named*; salutor, *am saluted*; appello, vocor, *am called*; scribor, *am written down*; inscribor, *am entitled*; describor, *am described*; aestimor, *am esteemed*; numeror, *am reckoned*; credor, *am believed*; existimor, putor, *am thought*; ducor, *am deemed*; judicor, *am judged*; habeor, *am held*; censeor, *am counted*; noscor, *am known*; agnoscor, *am acknowledged*; dicor, *am said*; narror, *am related*; feror, perhibeor, trador, *am reported*; invenior, reperior, *am found*; deprehendor, *am discovered*; arguor, evincor, probor, *am proved*.

*Correlativa*, Pronouns and Particles which mutually correspond in their several classes. § 38. N. E. III.

## D.

*Dativus Casus* (dare, *to give*; Gr. δοτική πτώσις), the Dative (Receptive) Case. §§ 104–109. N. S. IV.

*Declinatio* (declinare, *to slope down*), the Flexion of Nouns. § 12. See Case.

*Defectiva* (deficere, *to fail*), Words wanting some forms. §§ 25, 74.

*Deminutiva* (deminuere, *to lessen*). N. E. I. D. 2.

*Deponens Verbum*, a Deponent Verb, so called because it lays aside (deponit) Active form, having Active sense. § 40.

## E.

*Ellipsis* (ἔλλειπειν, *to leave out*), a Figure of Syntax. § 158. N. S. I. E. 1.

*Enclitica*, (ἐγκλίθειν, *to lean on*), words which throw back their accent on the word before them: as, -quē, -vě, -ně.

\**Enthesis* (ἐντιθέναι, *to place in*), a group of words, sometimes one word, forming an abbreviated Adjectival or Adverbial Clause. See *Attributive Relation*, observing that the Entheses, regum ditissimus, rex Lydorum, are equivalent to the Clauses, qui regum ditissimus fuit, qui rex Lydorum fuit; and the Entheses dives, rex, to the Clauses dum dives erat, dum rex erat. An Ablative Absolute is usually an Adverbial Enthesis of Time, Cause, Condition, or Concession.

*Enunciatio* (enunciare, *to state*), a proposition or statement; the first and principal of the three forms of a Simple Sentence. N. S. X. A.

*Enunciatio Obliqua*, Oblique Enunciation (indirect statement), the first and principal of the three kinds of Substantival Clauses. Its chief form is the Infinitive Clause (Accusative-and-Infinitive). § 94. N. S. X. A. (1).



- Epithet* (Gr. ἐπίθετον), an Adjective simply qualifying a Noun: vir bonus, a good man. § 87. See *Attributive Relation*.
- Etymologia* (Gr. ἐτυμολογία, true; λόγος, word), Etymology; that division of Grammar which treats of Word-formation.

## F.

- Factitiva Verba* (facere, to make), Factitive or Quid-qualē Verbs. § 99. N. S. III. D.
- Figura, Figure* (figere, to fashion), a term used in Grammar for a 'Fashion' which departs from ordinary use. Figures are either of Etymology (as Contraction), of Syntax (as Ellipsis), of Prosody (as Synaloepha), or of Rhetoric (as Metaphora).
- Finalis Clausula* (finis, end), Final Clause; an Adverbial Clause, expressing purpose: introduced by ut, in order that; ne, lest, &c. § 152. N. S. XI. A., XIV. A. d.
- Finitum Verbum*, Finite Verb; a term comprising the three moods of a Verb, which have limits (fines), especially of Person, from which the other forms (hence called Verbum Infinitum) are free. § 42.
- Flexio* (flectere, to bend), Flexion; also called Inflection. § 11.

## G.

- Genitivus* (γενική πτώσις), the Genitive (Proprietary) Case. § 126-136. N. S. VI.
- Genus* (kind), Gender; the distinction of Nouns, as Masculine (m.), Feminine (f.), or Neuter (n.), that is, neither of the two former.
- Gerundium: Gerundivum* (gerere, to perform). The Gerundive is the Latin Participle in dus, and the Gerund is probably its Neuter Singular, declined as a Substantive, and attached to the Infinitive Verb-noun. The Gerundive seems to have been originally a Present Participle (oriundus, volvenda dies, etc.), but whether Active or Passive is disputed. § 140. N. S. VII.
- Graecismus*, Graecism; the imitation of a Greek idiom in Latin.

## H.

- Historic Infinitive*, the Infinitive used in direct predication for a Finite Verb. § 140, 2. N. S. VII. A.

## I.

- Imperativus Modus* (imperare, to command), the Imperative Mood in Verbs, which commands or entreats. § 42.
- Impersonalia Verba* (in, not, persona, person), Impersonal Verbs, which cannot take a Personal Pronoun as Subject. §§ 75, 175. N. S. XIV. F.
- Indicativus Modus* (indicare, to show), the declarative or absolute Mood of Verbs. § 42.
- Infinitiva Clausula*, the Infinitive Clause: the Substantival Clause called Accusative and Infinitive. See *Enunciatio Obliqua*.
- Infinitivum* (Nomen), the Verb-noun Infinitive. §§ 45, 140. N. S. VII.
- Infinitum Verbum*. §§ 45, 140. N. S. VII. See *Finitum Verbum*.
- Interjectio* (interjicere, to throw between). §§ 86, 137.

GLOSSARIUM GRAMMATICUM.

*Interrogatio Infinitiva*, the Infinitive Clause used as an indignant question. N. S. x. D.

*Interrogatio Obliqua*, Oblique Interrogation. As Direct Interrogation is one of the three forms which a Simple Sentence may assume, so Oblique or Indirect Interrogation is one of the three kinds of Substantival Clauses. § 149. N. S. x. A. (3).

*Intransitiva Verba*, Intransitive Verbs; Verbs which do not regularly take an Accusative of the Object. N. S. III. D. See *Transitiva*.

K

*Kalendarium*, the Calendar or plan of the days of the Roman month; so called from *Kalendae*, the *Calends*, or first day in it. N. E. iv. C.

L

*Locativus* (locus, *place*), Locative Case; a case existing in Sanskrit, of which fragments remain in Greek and Latin. § 121. N. S. v. G. 2.

M

*Mobilia Substantiva* (*mobilis*, *moveable*). Substantives which have a Feminine corresponding to a Masculine form. N. E. i. D. 1.

*Modus* (manner), Mood; that Accident of a Verb which shows the manner in which its action or state is conceived of. § 42.

N

*Negativae Particulae* (*negare*, *to deny*), Negatives. § 82. N. S. xiv. A.

*Nomina* (Gr. *ὄνομα*, *a name*), Nouns comprise Substantives, Adjectives, and Pronouns; but the term is often used when Substantives alone are meant. § 9.

*Nominativus Casus* (*nominare*, *to name*. Gr. *ὀνομαστική πτώσις*). §§ 87, 88, 93. See *Case*.

\**Noun-term*, a Substantive, or what may stand for a Substantive; as Adjective, Pronoun, Verb-noun or Substantival Clause. § 87. N. S. i. C.

*Numeralia*, words representing Number. N. E. iv. A.

*Numaria Res*, Roman money. N. E. iv. D.

O

*Objective Relation*, that of the Accusative of the Nearer Object to a Transitive Verb. N. S. III.

*Objectum* (*obicere*, *to cast in the way*), Object; that which is affected by action: if directly affected it is called Nearer Object (Accusative); if indirectly, Remoter Object (Dative). N. S. III. iv.

*Obliqua Oratio* (Oblique Oration), any statement, command, or question expressed in indirect construction. This term includes the three Substantival Clauses: Oblique Enunciation, Petition, and Interrogation, though sometimes used with special reference to the construction of Accusative-and-Infinitive (Infinitive Clause), which is the chief form of Oblique Enunciation or Narration. N. S. x. A. B.



*Oblique Subject*, the Accusative Subject of an Infinitive. § 94.  
*Oblique Complement*, the Accusative Complement of an Oblique Copulative Clause. § 94. N. S. II. A., III. D.

## P.

*Participium* (partem capere, *to take a share*), an Adjectival Verb-form which shares the functions of Adjective and Verb. §§ 45, 142. N. S. XIV. D.

*Partes Orationis*, Parts of Speech, or Words. § 9.

*Particulæ*, Particles, or small Parts of Speech; a name given to the four undeclined Parts, and also including some which are only used in compound words; as, ambi-, re-, se-, in-, dis-. § 82, &c.

*Partitiva Vocabula* (partiri, *to divide*). N. S. VI. B.

*Passiva Vox* (pati, *to suffer*), the Passive Voice, or form used in Verbs to show that something is acted upon, and so 'suffers.' This Voice is proper to Transitive Verbs only; but many Intransitive Verbs use it in Impersonal construction. § 76. A Passive Verb is often Reflexive; as, vertor, *I turn myself*. For *Passive Construction* see N. S. XIV. E.

*Patronymicum* (πατήρ, *father*; ὄνομα, *name*), Patronymic, a title expressing descent from a father or ancestor.

*Perfectum* (perficere, *to complete*) *Tempus*, the Perfect Tense, which in Latin has a double use. § 48. N. S. XIII.

*Perfect-stem*. §§ 46, 48.

*Periphrastic Conjugation* (περιφράζειν, *to speak circuitously*). § 64.

*Petitio Obliqua*. As Petition (command or entreaty) is the second of the three forms of Simple Sentences, so Oblique Petition is the second of the three kinds of Substantival Clauses. N. S. X. A. (2).

*Phrasis* (φράσις), a Phrase; a combination of words, or a single word idiomatically used, containing a notion, but not forming a Clause or an Enthesis; as, multae artis, ruri, Preposition with Case, etc.

*Position* (situs), a term in Prosody to express that a vowel is short, long, or doubtful, by standing before other letters. § 162.

*Praedicatum* (praedicare, *to declare*), the Predicate of a Sentence, or that which is declared of the Subject. Writers on Logic resolve every proposition into Subject, Copula, and what they call Predicate. But in Grammar this would only mislead, for it is not in this form that authors write. Since every Finite Verb is Predicative, inaccuracy is avoided by calling the Verb a Predicate only when it completes Predication, but in other instances 'the Verb of the Sentence.' When the Verb is the Copula or a Verb Copulative, the term which links it to the Subject, and completes the Predication, is called Complement (instead of Predicate), by which the inconvenience of giving the same title to Nouns and Verbs is obviated. § 87.

*Praepositio* (praeponere, *to place before*), Gr. πρόθεσις. §§ 9, 83, 103, 122. N. S. XIV. C.

*Predicative Relation*, the Relation existing between Subject and Verb of the Simple Sentence.

*Present-Stem*. §§ 11, 46. The Present-Stem of many Verbs differs from the True Stem. The chief variations are these:

1. *N* is inserted before the Consonant-character: as, fi-*n*-do, fra-*n*-go, &c. Before a labial this *n* becomes *m*: as, la-*m*-bo, ru-*m*-po.
2. *N* is suffixed (*a*) to a Vowel-character: as, si-*n*-o, li-*n*-o; (*b*) to a Liquid-character: as, tem-*n*-o, cer-*n*-o, sper-*n*-o, ster-*n*-o. So po-*n*-o for pos-*n*-o.
3. *Sc* is suffixed (*a*) to a Vowel-character: as, pa-*sc*-o, ira-*sc*-or, cre-*sc*-o, &c.; (*b*) to a Consonant-character with *i*: as, ulc-*isc*-or. So di-*sc*-o for dic-*sc*-o; na-*n*-c-*isc*-or for nac-or.
4. *L* is doubled: as, pel-*l*-o, tol-*l*-o.
5. *T* is suffixed to Guttural-character: as, flec-*t*-o, pec-*t*-o, nec-*t*-o.
6. A Guttural is cast out: as, stru-o for stru-*c*-o, vivo for vi-*g*-uo.
7. The Stem is re-duplicated: as, gi-*g*-no for gen-o, si-*st*-o for sto.

\**Prolicative Relation* (proferre, to extend), that in which Predication is extended by an Infinitive (therefore called *Prolicative*), joined to Verbs, Participles, and, poetically, Adjectives. § 140. N. S. VII. *B*. Attentive consideration shows that this use of the Infinitive is really distinct from its Objective use, constituting a special relation in grammar, and requiring a distinctive appellation.

*Pronomen* (Gr. ἀντωνυμία), an inflected Part of Speech, ranking among Nouns, and so called because it is a substitute for a name. § 38.

*Propria Nomina*, Proper Names; Nouns peculiar to Person or Place.

*Propriative Relation*, that of the Genitive to the word proper to it. § 126.

*Prosodia* (προσάδειν, to sing in accord), Prosody; that division of Grammar which treats of Quantity of Syllables and of Rhythm. The Laws of Metre are usually comprised in it. § 161. Notes.

*Protasis*. See *Apodosis*.

## R.

\**Receptive Complement*, an idiom, by which the Dative stands in the Complement, often with another Dative. § 108.

*Receptive Relation* (recipere, to receive), that of the Dative, as Case of the Recipient, to the governing word. § 104–109. N. S. IV.

*Recta Oratio*, Direct Oration, in a Principal Sentence, as distinguished from *Oratio Obliqua*. N. S. X.

*Reduplicatio* (reduplicare, to redouble), Reduplication; a peculiar mutation of form, by which the sense of words is varied, in Greek, Latin, and other languages. In Latin, its chief use is in forming the Perfect-stem of Verbs. See §§ 48, 81 II. (5), III. 9.

*Reflexiva Pronomina* (reflectere, to bend back), Reflexive Pronouns: se, with its Possessive suus; so called, because they 'bend back' their relation to the principal noun preceding; generally (but not always) the Subject of the Principal Sentence. § 145. N. S. VIII.

*Relation*. The Relations of Construction existing between the words of a Simple Sentence are eight in number: (1) Predicative; (2) Attributive; (3) Objective; (4) Receptive; (5) Circumstantive; (6) Propriative; (7) Prolicative; (8) Annexive. See these Words.

*Relativum Pronomen* (referre, to refer), the Relative Pronoun qui, so called because referred to an Antecedent Noun-term. See § 91,

N. S. 1. From this root are derived the Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns, and the Particles connected with them. In Latin Syntax the importance of the Relative is great.

*Root*, the common part of kindred words: as, ag- in ago, agito, agmen. § 11.

## S.

*Scansio* (scandere, to climb), the measurement of feet in a verse.

*Sententia* (sentire, to express thought), a Sentence. § 87. Sentences are Simple or Compound. A Simple Sentence is either a statement (enunciatio), a command or request (petitio), or a question (interrogatio). A Compound Sentence consists of two or more Simple Sentences linked together, one being the Principal Sentence, the rest either Co-ordinate (not dependent) or Subordinate (dependent in construction); which two kinds are called Clauses. N. S. x. A. See *Clausula*.

*Spirants* (spirare, to breathe). § 3. See *Consonantes*.

*Stem*, the crude form of a Word without the Endings: as, mensa-, mone-. A Vowel-stem stripped of its vowel is called a Clipt Stem: as, mon- for mon-e-.

*Subjectum* (subjicere, to place under), Subject. §§ 87, 88, 93, 94. N. S. i. ii.

\**Subobliqua Clausula*, a Suboblique Clause, subordinate to Oratio Obliqua. If Oratio Obliqua is contained in the sense only, not in form, the Subordinate Clause is said to be 'Subobliquae potestatis,' of Suboblique power, or 'virtually Suboblique.' N. S. x. B.

*Substantival Clauses*, the three forms of a Simple Sentence (statement, command, question) thrown into Oblique Construction, and called Oblique Enunciation, Oblique Petition and Oblique Interrogation. N. S. x. A.

*Substantivum* (substare, to stand beneath), a Substantive, the first of the inflected Parts of Speech. §§ 9 I. (1), 12, 16, etc.

*Superlativus Gradus* (superferre, to carry above), the highest Degree of a Compared Adjective or Adverb. §§ 35-37.

*Supine-Stem*. § 47.

*Supinum*, Supine, an unmeaning term, applied to the two Cases of the Verb-noun which end in *um* and *u* severally. §§ 45, 141 (5) (6).

*Syllaba* (συλλαμβάνειν, to take together), a Syllable; that is, one or more letters pronounced in a breath. § 5.

*Syncope* (συγκόπτειν, to cut short), the shortening of a word by casting out an inner vowel: as, patri for pateri.

*Synesis* (σύνεσις, meaning), a Figure of Syntax. § 160. N. S. i. E. 3.

*Syntaxis* (συντάσσειν, to arrange together), that division of Grammar which treats of the construction of sentences.

## T.

*Temporalis Clausula*, a Temporal Clause: an Adverbial Clause introduced by a Conjunction of Time. § 152. N. S. xi.

*Tempus* (time), Tense; that which marks the time of action in Verbs. §§ 43, 48.

*Tempus* (time), Quantity. § 162.

\* *Trajectiva* (trajicere, *to throw over*); Verbs and Adjectives, which take a Dative. Pure Trajective Verbs have a Dative alone (Cui-Verbs): Trajective Verbs Transitive (Cui-quid Verbs) have Accusative and Dative. § 104. N. S. iv.

*Transitiva Verba* (transire, *to pass over*), Verbs which pass over to an Accusative of the nearer Object. § 96 N. S. iii.

## U.

*Universalia*, a large class of Pronouns and Pronominals. N. E. III.

## V.

*Verb of Being* (sum, esse). Gr. ῥῆμα ὑπαρκτικόν. This has been translated by Latin Grammarians, 'Verbum Substantivum'; a term not true to the Greek, and confusing to learners. Sum is the Verb of Being, essential to the expression of thought. It supplies the Copula of Grammar and Logic. Hence we find its root widely spread throughout the languages of the world. §§ 49, 87. N. S. II.

*Verbum* (Gr. ῥῆμα, *the word*), Verb; an inflected Part of Speech, so called, as *the Word* which effects discourse. §§ 9, 39, etc.

\* *Verb-Noun*. All the parts of the Verb Infinite are Verb-Nouns Substantival or Adjectival, uniting functions of the Verb with functions of the Noun. §§ 45, 140, etc. N. S. I. C.

*Vocales* (vox, *voice*), Vowels. § 2. Their relations are shown in the following scheme, in which the sign † represents the vowel wavering between *i* and *u* (opt̄imus, opt̄umus), which the Emperor Claudius brought for a time into public use:

Standard vowel

a

Sharp medial e                    o Flat medial

Sharp semiconsonant i            †            u Flat semiconsonant

Medial

*J* and *u* did not exist anciently. *J* was introduced to represent the consonant power of *i*; *u* to represent the vowel-power of *v*.

*Vocativus Casus* (vocare, *to call*), the Case of one addressed, which stands out of the Sentence. §§ 14, 87, 137.

*Vowel-change*, the weakening or strengthening of Vowels, which occurs in Flexion, Derivation and Composition. It appears in the formation of the Perfect and Supine Stems of Verbs, and in the change of many Simple Verbs when compounded. §§ 81, 84. N. E. II.

*Vox*, Voice; that form, by which Verbs are shown as *doing* or *suffering*. § 39. N. S. XIV. E.

LONDON

PRINTED BY SPOTTISWOODE AND CO.

NEW-STREET SQUARE



Just published, in 12mo. price 2s. 6d. cloth,

THE  
PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN PRIMER.

Edited with the Sanction of the Head Masters of the Public  
Schools included in Her Majesty's Commission.

THIS *Latin Primer*—which is now in use in all the Nine Schools named in Her Majesty's Commission, viz. Winchester, Eton, St. Paul's, Westminster, Merchant Taylors', Rugby, Shrewsbury, Harrow, and Charter House,—is founded on a Latin Grammar which has been largely used in English Schools during the last twenty years. It has been revised with great care and attention, first by its Author, subsequently by the Head Masters of various public schools, with the advice of other

scholars engaged in classical instruction. In the manner of its use, this book does not differ from the Grammar on which it is founded, or from any other synthetic grammar. Its memorial lessons need discreet guidance, careful explanation, and sound catechesis on the part of the masters. They need also to be supported and supplemented by good exercise-books (such as *Subsidia Primaria*, now in the press) of a merely analytic and imitative character.

---

---

LATIN SCHOOL BOOKS

ADAPTED TO THE PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN PRIMER.

---

The First LATIN PARSING BOOK, adapted to the Public School Latin Primer. By JOHN T. WHITE, D.D. of C. C. C. Oxford; Joint-Author of WHITE and RIDDLE's Latin Dictionary. 12mo. price 2s.

THIS Parsing Book has for its object the gradual teaching of the structure of the Latin language in accordance with the Rules laid down in the *Syntax* of the *Public School Latin Primer*. It consists of Two Parts. In the First, each Rule of Syntax has been elucidated by the selection of a Passage or portion of a passage from a standard writer, and by its analysis in such a way as to bring out an exemplification of the rule. Care has also been taken to render the course of instruction altogether progressive.

In the Second Part the Author, reversing

his mode of proceeding, has presented to the learner the Passages themselves as they are found in the writers from whose works they have been taken, and that without any guide to the construction of their several parts. By reading them as thus printed, the pupil's attainments may be readily tested; and it may be at once seen whether his knowledge, not merely of parsing, but of the words which he has had brought before his notice, is really such as from his training it ought to be.

A VOCABULARY is given of all the words occurring in the work.

BRADLEY'S *CORNELIUS NEPOS*, with Grammatical Notes adapted to the Public School Latin Primer. By JOHN T. WHITE, D.D. 12mo. price 3s. 6d.

BRADLEY'S *EUTROPIUS*, with Grammatical Notes adapted to the Public School Latin Primer, and a Vocabulary on the plan of Dr. WHITE's 'Junior Scholar's Latin Dictionary.' By JOHN T. WHITE, D.D. 12mo. 2s. 6d.

---

London: LONGMANS, GREEN, and CO. Paternoster Row.



BRADLEY'S SELECT FABLES of *PHÆDRUS*, with Grammatical Notes adapted to the Public School Latin Primer, and a Vocabulary on the plan of WHITE'S 'Junior Scholar's Latin Dictionary.' By JOHN T. WHITE, D.D. 12mo. 2s. 6d.

In the new editions of *Phædrus*, *Eutropius*, *Cornelius Nepos*, Dr. WHITE has altogether remodelled the notes and adapted their grammatical portion to the *Syntax* of the *Public School Latin Primer*. This he has done from a conviction, based on careful and dispassionate examination, that that *Syntax* is more philosophical, more simple, and better adapted for the instruction of boys whose reading does not exceed its limits than any found in any elementary Grammar which has yet appeared.

The *Phædrus* and *Eutropius* are each accompanied by a Vocabulary of the words which they respectively contain. To this portion of the works, which is written on the plan of Dr. WHITE'S *Junior Scholar's Latin-English Dictionary*, much information formerly embodied in the Notes has been transferred. And it should further be no-

ticed, as an important feature attaching to it, that here also will be found an accord with the *Public School Latin Primer*. The principles which guided Dr. WHITE in the preparation of the various Latin-English Dictionaries to which his name is attached will be found fully and systematically developed in his *Latin Suffices*; and a comparison of that work with so much of the *Public School Latin Primer* as speaks of the formation of words will show a harmony of thought upon the subject between the Authors of the two works. This will be further seen by reference to the Preface of the *Junior Scholar's Latin-English Dictionary*; a Dictionary—in indeed the *only* Dictionary—in which the above-named principles form the basis of the treatment of its words, and which, by the mode of printing adopted, exhibits them to the eye at a glance.

THE FOLLOWING

SCHOOL BOOKS ADAPTED TO THE PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN PRIMER  
ARE NEARLY READY FOR PUBLICATION.

*SUBSIDIA PRIMARIA*, being a Companion Book to the Public School Latin Primer. By the same Editor.

*PRAXIS LATINA PRIMARIA*, a Handbook of Questions and Exercises for daily use; adapted to the Public School Latin Primer. By JOHN DAY COLLIS, D.D. Head Master of King Edward VI. Grammar School, Bromsgrove.

\*\*\* Also, by the same Author, similarly adapted, the Sixth Edition of *PONTES CLASSICI*, No. I. and the Eleventh Edition of *IRREGULAR LATIN VERBS*.

The First LATIN EXERCISE BOOK, adapted to the Public School Latin Primer; being a Companion Book to Dr. WHITE'S First Latin Parsing Book. By JOHN T. WHITE, D.D.

VALPY'S LATIN DELECTUS. Edited by JOHN T. WHITE, D.D.

The Rev. Dr. KENNEDY'S *PALESTRA STILI LATINI* and *CURRICULUM STILI LATINI*, New Editions of both works adapted to the Public School Latin Primer.

\*\*\* The above Works are all printed uniformly with the *Public School Latin Primer*.

Lately published, and may now be had,

ELEMENTARY LATIN PROSE EXERCISES. By the Rev. H. MUSGRAVE WILKINS, M.A. Fellow of Merton College, Oxford. Fifth Edition, adapted to the Public School Latin Primer. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d. KEY (for *Schoolmasters* and *Tutors* only), price 5s.

Messrs. LONGMANS and Co. have recently published, in square 12mo. pp. 664, price 7s. 6d. bound,

The JUNIOR SCHOLAR'S LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY, abridged for the use of Schools from the Dictionaries of White and Riddle, by JOHN T. WHITE, D.D. of Corpus Christi College, Oxford, surviving Joint-Author.

\*\*\* In this Dictionary, the Formation of Words, which forms one prominent feature of the Public School Latin Primer, is, by the mode of printing adopted, exhibited to the eye at a glance.

London: LONGMANS, GREEN, and CO. Paternoster Row.

3<sup>rd</sup> -

N & V. —

Acc: - em

except nouns nante  
then acc = N & V

Gen: - LS

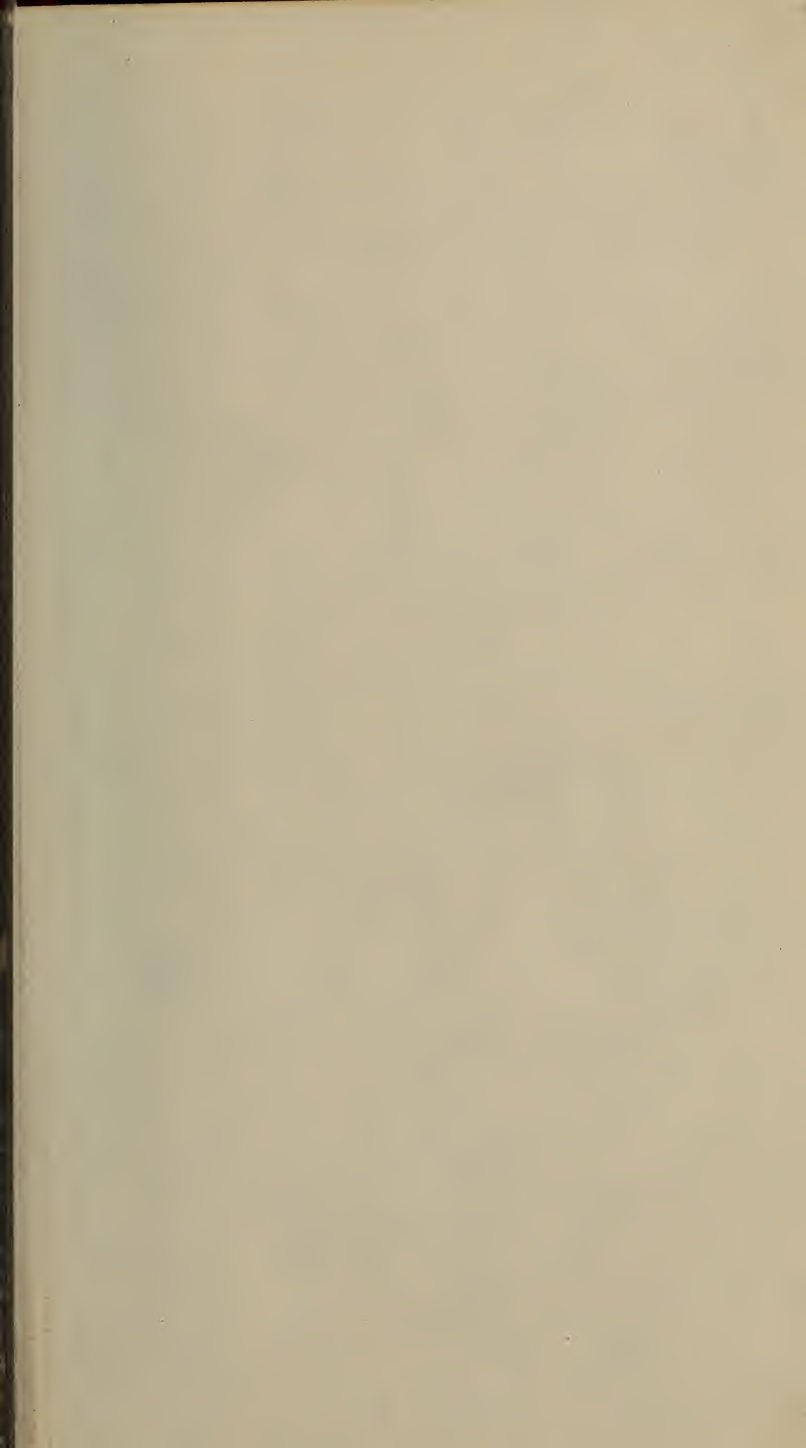
Dat: - i

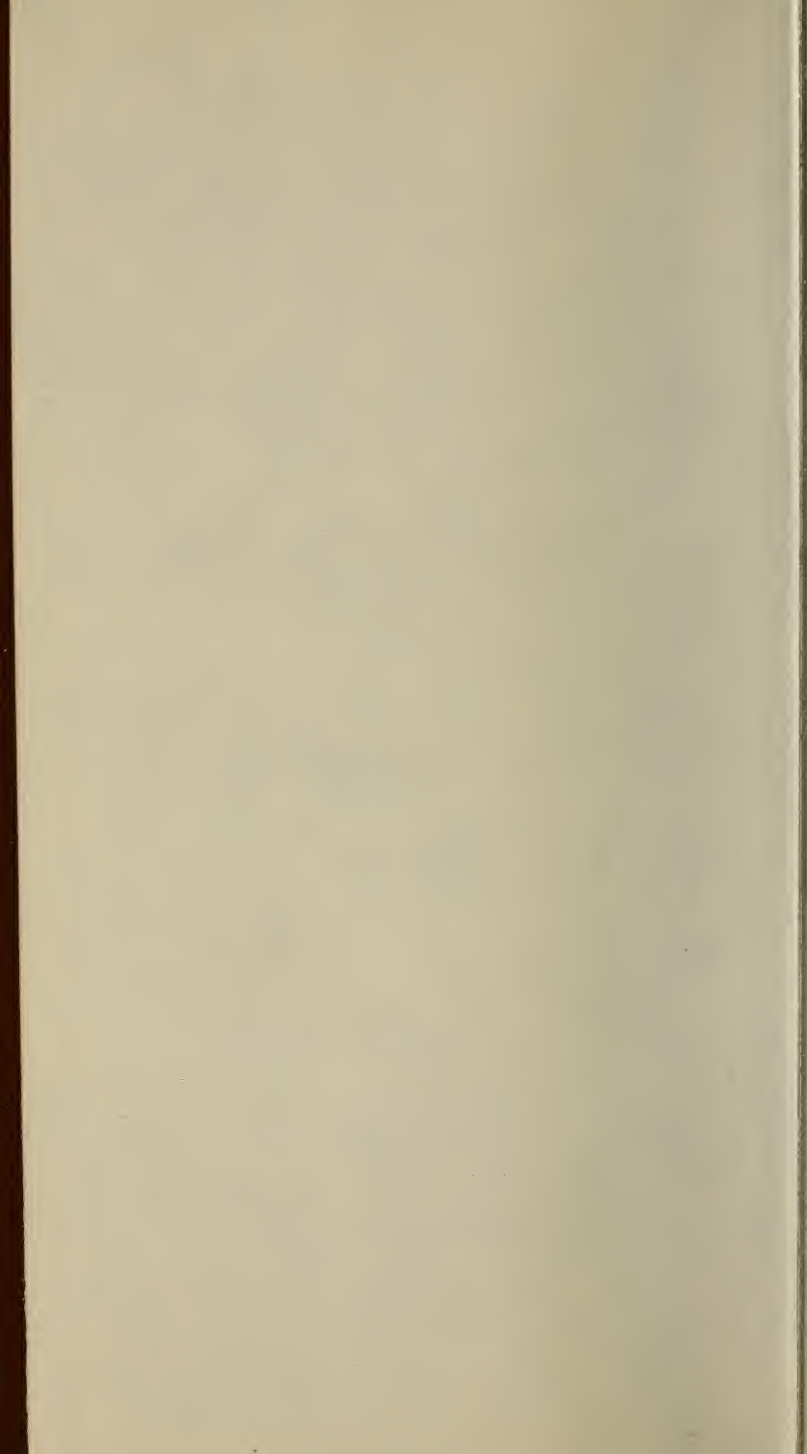
abl: - e

	1	2	3	4
Sunday	12	13	14	15
Monday	13	14	15	16
Tuesday	14	15	16	17
Wednesday	15	16	17	18
Thursday	16	17	18	19
Friday	17	18	19	20
Saturday	18	19	20	21
Weeks	1	2	3	4

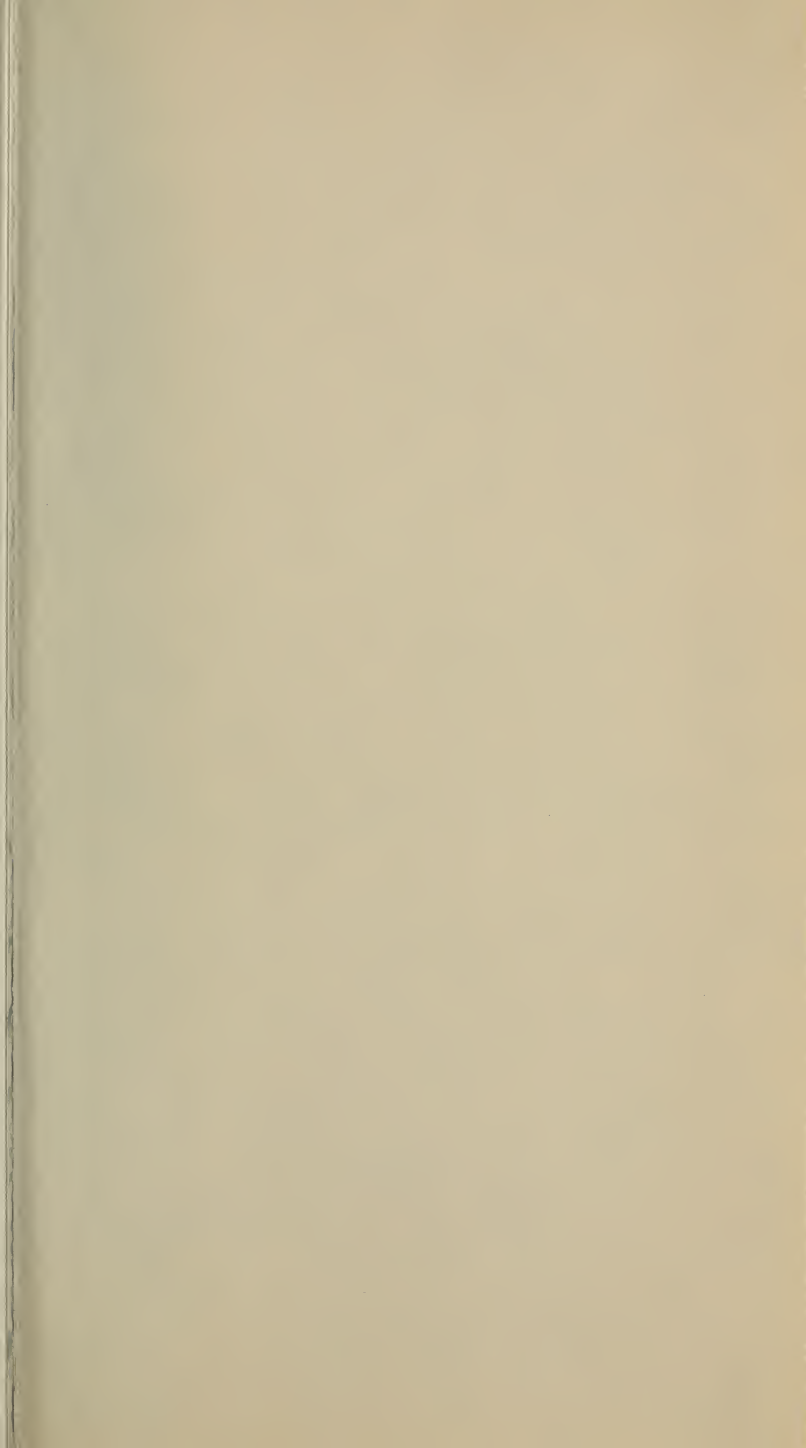
2 weeks to the  
Indiculus













Decidified using the Bookkeeper process  
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide  
Treatment Date: July 2006

**Preservation Technologies**  
A WORLD LEADER IN PAPER PRESERVATION  
111 Thomson Park Drive  
Cranberry Township, PA 16066  
(724) 779-2111



DEC 74



N. MANCHESTER,  
INDIANA

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 039 056 8

